



2021

Low Cab Forward 6.6L Gasoline Engine 3500/4500 Owner's Manual



chevrolet.com

Contents

Introduction	1
Keys, Doors, and Windows	9
Seats and Restraints	21
Storage	35
Instruments and Controls	43
Lighting	58
Infotainment System	63
Climate Controls	93
Driving and Operating	99
Vehicle Care	148
Service and Maintenance	218
Technical Data	237
Customer Information	248
Reporting Safety Defects	254
Index.	255

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 84855772 A First Printing

Introduction



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CHEVROLET, and the CHEVROLET Emblem are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

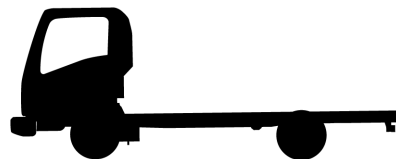
This manual has been prepared to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle, and to provide important safety information. It includes a Maintenance Schedule and is supplemented with a Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet. We urge you to read these publications carefully. The following recommendations will help ensure the most enjoyable, safe, and trouble-free operation of your vehicle. When it comes to service, keep in mind that your commercial truck

dealer knows your vehicle best and is interested in your complete satisfaction. Your dealer invites you to return for all of your service needs both during and after the warranty period. Remember, if you have a concern that has not been handled to your satisfaction, follow the steps in the separate Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet. We thank you for choosing our product, and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction.

Model Reference

The models covered in this manual are:

Single Cab:



- 3500
- 4500

Crew Cab:



- 3500
- 4500

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.



Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.



Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

Caution

Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Warning/Caution Labels in Your Vehicle

The warning/caution labels in your vehicle indicate very important instructions and information that you should respect to ensure safe and proper use of the vehicle. Be sure to read them before using the vehicle.

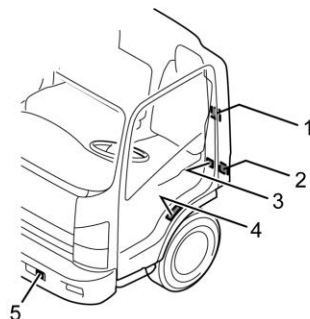
If any of these labels are peeling or illegible due to wear or scratches, please contact your dealer for a replacement.

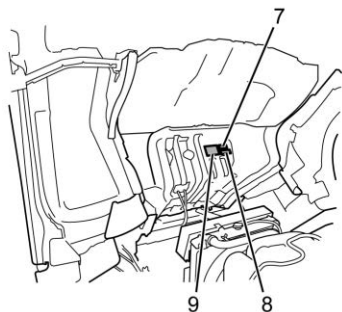
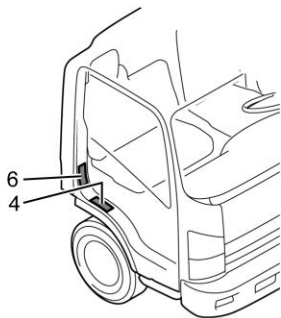
Some examples of warning/caution labels are indicated on the following pages, but there are many others not shown. Also, the contents of these labels may vary from model to model.

The warning/caution labels shown may be located differently in your vehicle.

Warning/Caution Labels

Single cab model

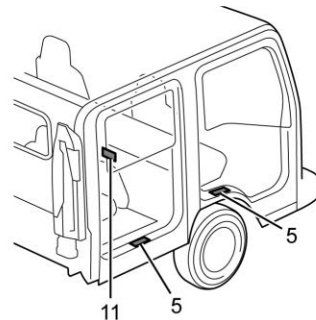
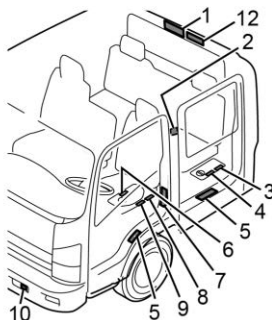




No.	Description
1	Cab tilt instruction
2	Automatic transmission fluid level

No.	Description
3	Vehicle certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emissions
4	NO STEP instruction
5	Towing
6	Vehicle noise emission control information
7	Engine cooling
8	Fan blade
9	Vehicle emission control information

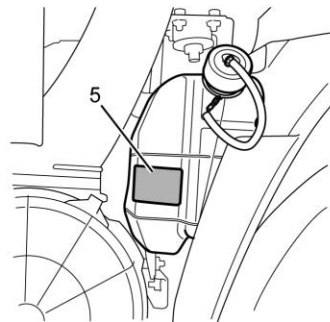
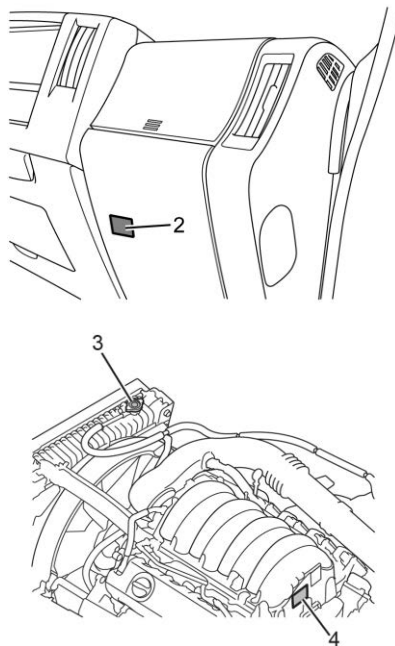
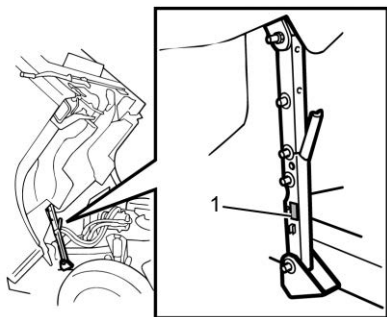
Crew cab model



No.	Description
1	Vehicle emission control information
2	Vehicle certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emissions
3	Engine coolant check
4	Engine coolant level
5	NO STEP instruction
6	Power steering fluid
7	Vehicle noise emission control information
8	Engine cooling

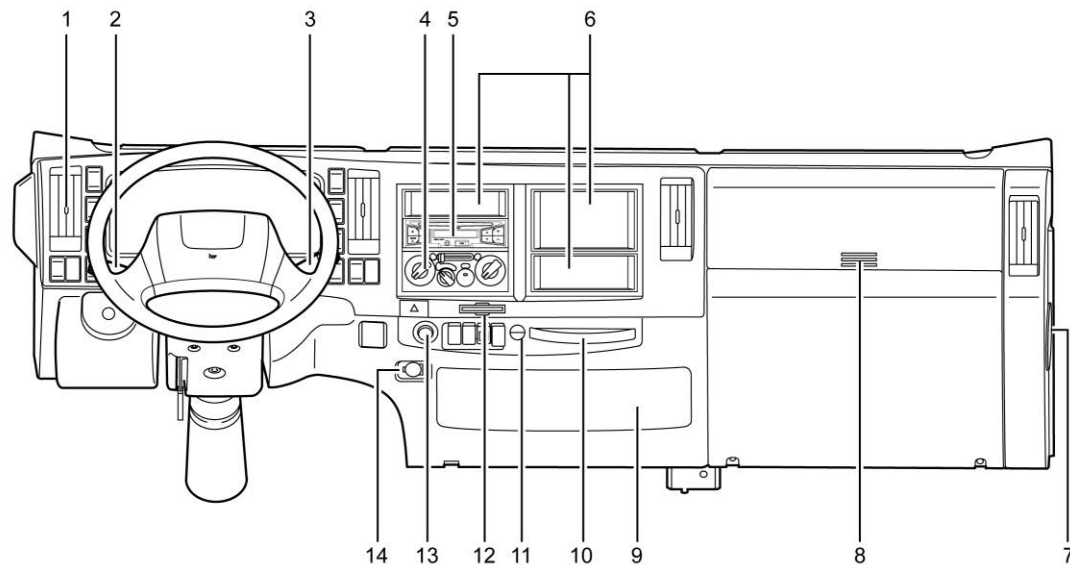
4 Introduction

No.	Description
9	Fan blade
10	Towing
11	Automatic transmission fluid level
12	Engine emission control information



No.	Description
1	Safety lock pin (Single cab)
2	Engine cover notice (Crew cab)
3	Radiator cap
4	Engine emission control information
5	Engine coolant (Single cab)

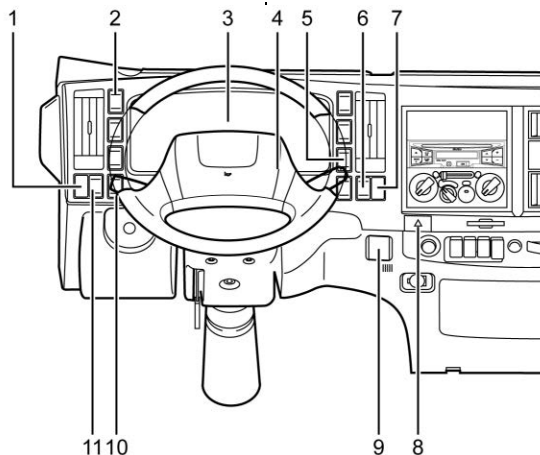
Instrument Panel Overview



6 Introduction

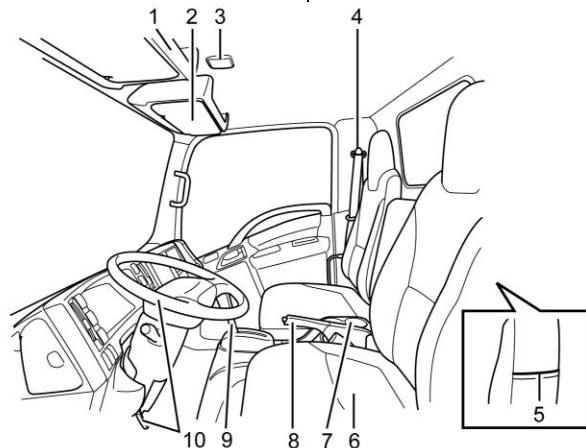
- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Air Flow Direction Control Lever. See <i>Air Vents</i> ⇨ 96.2. <i>Exterior Lamp Controls</i> ⇨ 58.
Cruise Control Set Switch. See <i>Cruise Control</i> ⇨ 141.3. Windshield Wiper and Windshield Washer Switch. See <i>Windshield Wiper/Washer</i> ⇨ 44.4. Heater and Manual Air Conditioner. See <i>Climate Control Systems</i> ⇨ 93.5. Radio with CD/USB/Bluetooth. See <i>AM-FM Radio</i> ⇨ 63 and <i>Bluetooth Audio</i> ⇨ 82.6. Small Article Storage Pockets. See <i>Instrument Panel Storage</i> ⇨ 35.7. Windshield Washer Fluid Tank. See <i>Washer Fluid</i> ⇨ 165.8. <i>Glove Box</i> ⇨ 36. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">9. Relay Box. See <i>Electrical System Overload</i> ⇨ 184.10. <i>Cupholders</i> ⇨ 37.11. Hook. See <i>Shopping Bag Hooks</i> ⇨ 38.12. Card Holder. See <i>Instrument Panel Storage</i> ⇨ 35.13. Accessory Power Outlet. See <i>Power Outlets</i> ⇨ 45.14. Accessory Power Outlet. See <i>Power Outlets</i> ⇨ 45. |
|---|---|

Instrument Panel Overview (Driver Side)



1. Instrument Panel Light Level Control. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ 61.
2. Rear Body Interior Light Switch. See *Cargo Lamp* ⇨ 61.
3. Instruments, Warning Lights and Indicator Lights. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ 48.
4. Horn Button. See *Horn* ⇨ 44.
5. Rear Power Window Lock Switch. See *Power Windows* ⇨ 18.
6. Outside Rearview Mirror Heater Switch. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ 18.
7. Cruise Control Main Switch. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 141.
8. Hazard Warning Flasher Switch. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ 59.
9. Rear Power Window Switch. See *Power Windows* ⇨ 18.
10. Odometer Check Switch. See *Odometer* ⇨ 48.
11. Door Lock Switch. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ 16.

Instrument Panel Overview (Vehicle Interior)



1. Overhead Tray. See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ 35.
2. Sun Visor. See *Sun Visors* ⇨ 20.
3. Dome Lamps ⇨ 61.
4. Seat Belt. See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ 27.
5. Seat Back Pocket (Driver Side). See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ 35.
6. Seat. See *Seat Position* ⇨ 21.
7. Cupholders ⇨ 37.
8. Parking Brake Lever. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ 139.
9. Selector Lever ⇨ 136.
10. Fully Adjustable Steering. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 43.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys	9
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System	10
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation	11
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle	14
Door Locks	14
Power Door Locks	16

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Security	17
------------------------	----

Exterior Mirrors

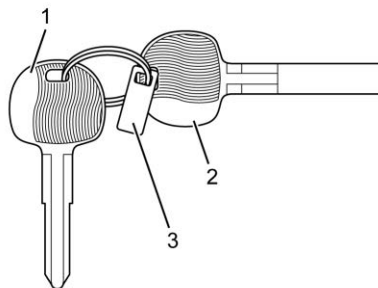
Mirrors	17
Heated Mirrors	18

Windows

Power Windows	18
Sun Visors	20

Keys and Locks

Keys



1. Main Key
2. Spare Key
3. Metal plate with key code

One key (1) can operate all the locks on the vehicle. Keep one of the two keys provided as a spare (2). Record the key code numbers.

Both sides of the key are identical, so you can insert the key in the engine control switch without worrying about which way you insert it.

The key code is indicated on a separate metal plate (3) in order to prevent it from being acquired by an unauthorized person.

Where is the Key Used?

Where	For What
Engine Control Switch	Starting and shutting down the engine
Front doors	Locking and unlocking the doors.

Wipe off the key to remove any dirt or dust, etc. before using it.

To prevent theft, store the metal plate with key code in a safe place other than the vehicle.

Should you lose the key, please give the key number to the nearest dealer. The dealer will be able to duplicate your key.

If you resell the vehicle, be sure to hand over the plate with key code to the new owner together with the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

If the key is unintentionally rotated while the vehicle is running, the ignition could be moved out of the RUN position. This could be caused by heavy items hanging from the key ring, or by large or long items attached to the key ring that could be contacted by the driver or steering wheel. If the ignition moves out of the RUN position, the engine will shut off, braking and steering power assist may be impacted, and airbags may not deploy. To reduce the risk of unintentional rotation of the ignition key, do not change the way the ignition key and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if equipped, are connected to the provided key rings.



The ignition key and key rings, and RKE transmitter, if equipped, are designed to work together as a system to reduce the risk of unintentionally moving the key out of the RUN position. The ignition key has a small hole to allow attachment of the provided key ring. It is important that any replacement ignition keys have a small hole. See your dealer if a replacement key is required.

The combination and size of the rings that came with your keys were specifically selected for your vehicle. The rings are connected to the key like two links of a chain to reduce the risk of unintentionally moving the key out of the RUN position. Do not add any additional items to the ring attached to the ignition key. Attach additional items only to the second ring, and limit added items to a few essential keys or small, light items no larger than an RKE transmitter.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ 253.

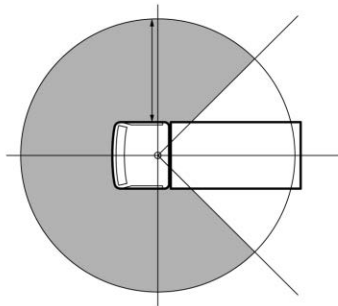
If equipped with this feature, and there is a decrease in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Replacing the Battery in the Remote Control Unit" later in this section.

- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

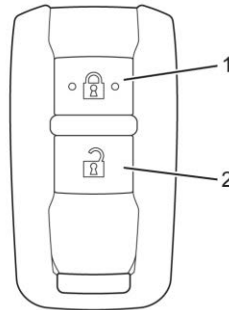
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

If equipped, the keyless entry system allows you to lock/unlock the doors by simply pressing the remote control button rather than inserting the key into the lock.



The remote control unit works within a 10 m (33 ft) radius of the cab center as indicated in the figure. The actual distance over which the unit operates may vary depending on conditions.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors



Remote Control Unit

Unlocking

Press the unlock button (2) of the remote control unit for 1 second or longer. The vehicle's keyless entry system causes the right and left turn signal lights to simultaneously flash twice upon receiving the signals from the remote control unit.

Locking

Press the lock button (1) of the remote control unit for 1 second or longer. The vehicle's keyless entry system causes the

right and left turn signal lights to simultaneously flash once upon receiving the signals from the remote control unit.

Should you lose the remote control unit, please contact your dealer.

After locking the doors using the remote control unit, be sure to check that they are locked by pulling the door handles.

Avoid getting water on the remote control unit, dropping it, hitting it against another object, or stepping on it; otherwise, the remote control unit could malfunction.

Do not leave the remote control unit on the dashboard or any other surface where the unit might be exposed to high temperatures (exceeding 60°C/140°F). Doing so may result in shorter battery life or malfunction of the remote control unit.

If the keyless entry system fails to operate normally, lock and unlock the doors using the key and have the system inspected by your dealer.

The lock or unlock buttons on the remote control unit must be fully pressed for more than 1 second to work.

12 Keys, Doors, and Windows

If you do not open any doors within about 30 seconds after pressing the unlock button to unlock the doors, the automatic locking function of the system will lock the doors again to prevent theft.

In areas near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, etc. or under any conditions involving strong electrical disturbances, the remote control unit operating range might change or the keyless entry system might not work.

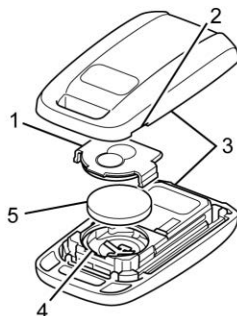
The keyless entry system does not operate in the following cases:

- The engine control switch is in the "ON" position.
- The key is inserted in the engine control switch.
- One of the doors is open.

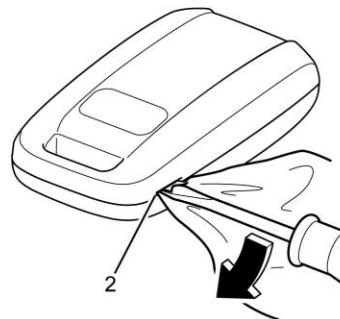
Replacing the Battery in the Remote Control Unit

When the battery runs down, replace it. Battery life is approximately two years.

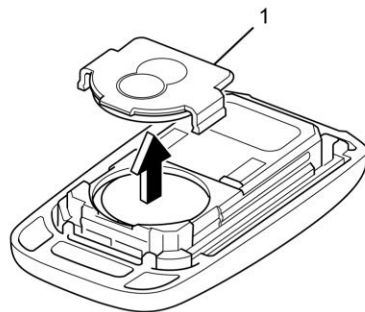
Battery Used	Number of Battery
Lithium battery	1
Model number: CR 2032	
Voltage: DC3V	



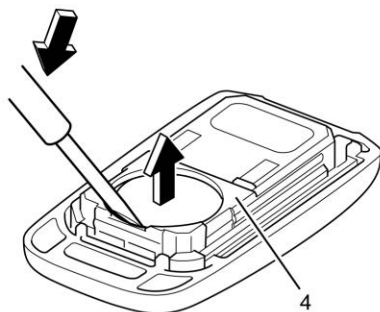
1. Battery Cover
2. Remote Control Cover Notch
3. Remote Control Unit Cover
4. Remote Control Unit
5. Battery



1. Pry open the remote control unit cover (3) by inserting a flat head screwdriver or similar tool into the notch of the remote control unit cover (2). Wrap a piece of cloth or tape around the tip of the screwdriver so as not to damage the remote control unit cover (3).



2. Remove the battery cover (1).



3. Insert a flat head screwdriver or similar tool into the recess of the remote control unit (4) to remove the old battery.
4. Insert the new battery into the remote control unit (4) with its positive side visible, and press the battery downward until fully seated.
5. Install the remote control unit (4), battery (5), and battery cover (1) in their original positions inside the remote control unit cover (3).
6. Close the remote control unit cover (3).

When closing the remote control unit cover (3), check that there is no dust, hair, or anything else caught underneath it. A poorly sealed remote control unit could become deteriorated.

Please comply with the collection system available in your country for the disposal of old batteries. In addition, take special care to prevent any danger to children.

Warning

When changing the battery, use only a battery of the same type as the original battery, or an equivalent. Otherwise, there is a risk of explosion.

Do not place the battery in direct sunlight, or near a fire or other sources of heat.

Be sure to install the battery with the "+" and "-" sides correctly oriented. Incorrect installation will result in leakage of chemicals from inside the battery or other operational problems.

You and others could be seriously injured.

The battery life varies depending on how the remote control unit is used.

The battery has reached its end of life when the remote control unit works intermittently or does not work at all. Replace the battery as soon as this happens.

Getting In and Out of the Vehicle



Carefully check that the area around the vehicle is safe, hold the grip (1), and place your foot on the step (2) when getting in or out of the vehicle.

 Warning

When getting in or out of the vehicle, make sure you use the step and grips to support yourself at 3 points. It is very dangerous to stand on the tire or wheel when getting in or out of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Furthermore, do not try to jump in or out of the vehicle, as doing so could cause unexpected accidents or injuries.

Getting in or out of the vehicle with oily or greasy hands or shoes could cause you to slip. Always thoroughly clean grease, etc. from your hands and shoes before getting in or out of the vehicle.

Rain and snow can cause the step to become very slippery. Therefore, always remove snow and ice from your shoes and the step, and be careful not to slip when getting in and out of the vehicle.

Exercise caution when opening or closing doors, as strong winds or steep slopes may cause doors to open or close suddenly.

Do not hold parts other than the grip when getting in or out of the vehicle. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle or injuries to yourself or others.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Door Locks

 Warning

Be sure to do the following whenever you leave the vehicle:

1. Fully engage the parking brake.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Lock the doors.

When you close the door after sitting behind the wheel, check that the door is fully closed. Driving with any door ajar is very dangerous.

Before opening the door when climbing into or out of the cab, carefully check all areas around the vehicle for safety, especially the area at the rear of the vehicle. If you suddenly open a door without checking the surrounding area, the door could be hit by a vehicle behind you or a pedestrian.

Never leave the key in the vehicle.

Tilt the cab only after fully closing the doors.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

To help reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident, always lock the doors when driving. Along with using the seat belts properly, locking the doors helps prevent people from being thrown from the vehicle. It also helps prevent unintended opening of the doors and helps keep out intruders.

You and others could be seriously injured.

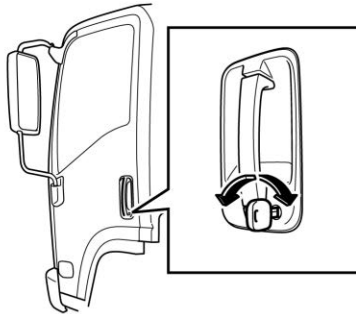
Warning

To protect the child from the danger of getting his/her hands and head trapped, an adult must open, close and lock the door for the child.

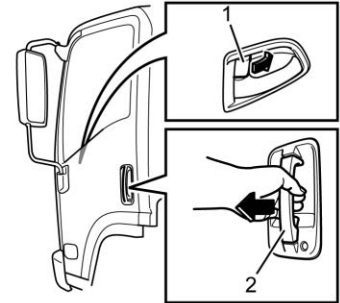
Be careful that the child does not interfere with the power window switches and get his/her hands or head trapped in the window. While a child is in the cab, be sure to control the power windows using the power window switches beside the driver's seat.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Overriding door locks are a standard safety feature. When the doors are locked, the inside handles will not open them. This is to prevent accidental opening of the doors.

Front Doors**Locking and Unlocking the Door from Outside Using the Key**

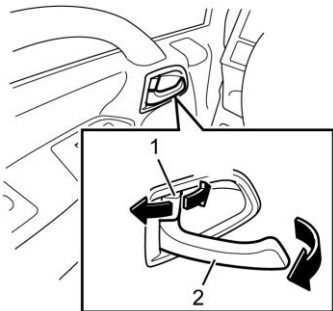
Turn the key toward the front of the vehicle to lock the door and turn it toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock it. The doors can be opened by pulling the outside door handle.

Locking the Door from Outside without Using the Key

First, push the lock button (1) on the inside door handle forward and then close the door while keeping the outside door handle (2) raised.

Before closing the door, be sure to check that you have the key with you.

Locking and Unlocking the Door from Inside



Push the lock button (1) forward to lock the door; pull the lock button backward to unlock it. After unlocking the door, open it by pulling the inside door handle (2). If the door is locked, the lock mechanism overrides operation of the door handle.

Rear Doors

Outside Door Handles

A handle for opening each cab door from outside the cab is located at the rear edge of the door's outer panel. To open the door from outside the vehicle, pull up on the handle.

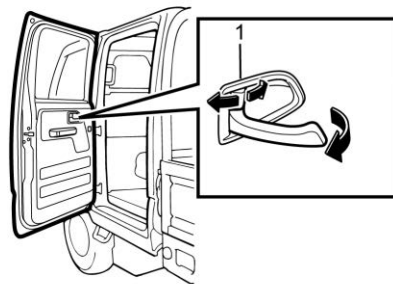
Locking the Door from the Outside

Push the door lock button forward and then close the door; the door will be locked.

Inside Door Handles

An inside handle for opening each cab door is located in the recessed area at the front of the door. To open the door, pull on the handle. If the door is locked, the lock mechanism overrides operation of the door handle. The door must first be unlocked before the handle can be used to open the door.

Locking and Unlocking Doors from the Inside



Push the door lock button (1) forward to lock the door and pull the lock button backward to unlock it.

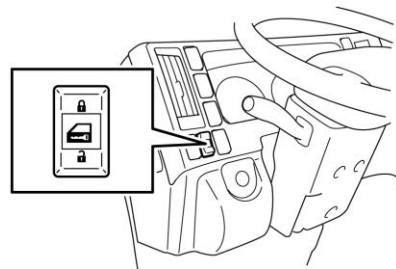
Power Door Locks

Power Door Lock (Central Door Lock)

How the Power Door Lock System Operates

When you lock the driver's door using the key or by operating the lock button, the power door lock system will automatically lock all doors simultaneously.

Door Lock Switch



Both doors can be locked and unlocked by pressing the power door lock switch.

Vehicle Security

Guard Against Theft

Your new vehicle has many features to help prevent theft of the vehicle, its equipment and contents. But these anti-theft features depend upon you to work.

The time to be most on guard is when leaving the vehicle:

- Park in a lighted spot when you can.
- Turn the engine control switch to "LOCK" and remove the key. This locks the switch and the steering controls. The selector lever is not locked.
- Keep items that may appear to be of value out of sight and locked up when possible.
- Fully close all windows and lock all doors.

Exterior Mirrors

Mirrors

Sit in the correct driving position with the seat adjusted properly. Then, check each mirror to ensure that a proper view of the rear and sides of the vehicle are provided. Make adjustments and clean mirrors if necessary.

Outside Rearview Mirrors

After properly adjusting your seat for proper driving position, adjust the mirrors so that they provide adequate views for checking the rear and the sides of the vehicle. Adjust the outside rearview mirrors by hand before vehicle operation. This helps you determine the location of objects seen in the mirror. If the outside mirror fogs up, warm up the outside rearview mirror's face to defog.

See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ 18.

Warning

Before driving, be sure to adjust the seat and mirrors to positions that give you a correct driving posture.

Do not adjust the outside mirrors while operating the vehicle. Adjust the mirrors when the vehicle is stationary, not while the vehicle is in motion.

When checking the rear of the vehicle with mirrors, be careful that this does not distract your attention from the traffic ahead.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

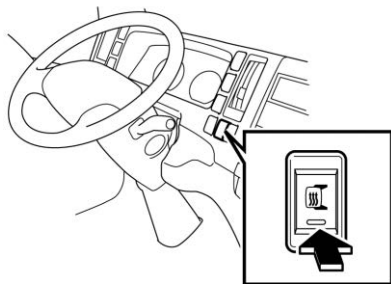
Outside mirrors may make the vehicle behind you appear farther away than it really is. Use these mirrors very carefully until you are able to correctly determine distances from the images.

Keep the mirrors in mind when passing another vehicle on a narrow road, moving the vehicle into a garage, or driving near pedestrians.

Do not drive with the mirrors folded.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Heated Mirrors



If the outside mirrors fog up, press the outside rearview mirror heater switch to defog them. When the switch is pressed the indicating light will illuminate. If the switch is pressed once again, it will switch to “OFF”, and the operation indicating light will go out.

Do not use this switch while the engine is off. Due to high power consumption, the battery can be discharged.

Turn off the switch as soon as defogging is complete.

Windows

Power Windows

Warning

If you are traveling with a child, do not leave the child alone in the vehicle. If the child touches the controls or equipment, an accident could occur. (For example, the vehicle could move or a fire could start.) Also, the cab inside could become dangerously hot in hot weather.

Warning

Before closing the windows, make sure that there is no risk of a hand, head, or anything else being trapped in the moving window.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Regardless of whether the vehicle is moving or stationary, you must never allow a child to put his/her head, hands,
(Continued)

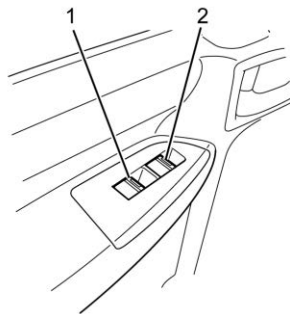
Warning (Continued)

or other body part out of the window. Allowing such behavior would be dangerous because the child could hit an obstacle.

You and others could be seriously injured.

The power windows operate only when the engine control switch is in the ON position. Open each door window by pressing the power window switch; close each one by raising the switch.

Window Switches on Driver Door



The power window switch on the driver door can operate both driver (2) and passenger (1) power windows.

To Open the Driver Window

Lightly pressing the driver side window switch will lower the driver window until the switch is released (manual mode operation). When the switch is firmly pressed, the window will lower completely without the need to press the switch continuously (automatic mode operation). If you want to stop the automatic movement of the window before it lowers completely, raise the switch lightly.

To Close the Driver Window

Lightly raising the driver side window switch will cause the driver window to move up until the switch is released.

To Open the Passenger Window

The passenger window continues to lower while the passenger side switch on the driver door is being pressed.

To Close the Passenger Window

The passenger window continues to move up while the passenger side switch on the driver door is being raised.

Window Switches on Passenger Door and Rear Doors (If equipped)

The power window switch on the passenger door can raise and lower the passenger side window only, while, if equipped, the rear power window switches can raise and lower the rear door windows.

Warning

Be sure to warn passengers not to let any part of the body become trapped or caught in a moving window.

You and others could be seriously injured.

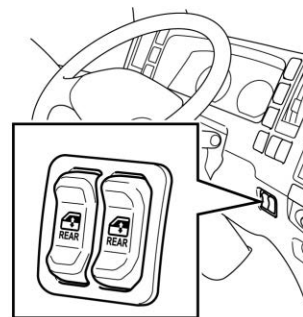
The window continues to lower while the window switch is being pressed and continues to rise while the switch is being raised. It will stop moving at any position when the switch is released.

When the rear power window lock switch is in the "LOCK" position, it is not possible to open and close the rear windows.

Window Switches on Center of Dashboard (Crew Cab Model)

The power window switch on the instrument panel and rear door can raise and lower the rear door window.

To Open a Rear Window



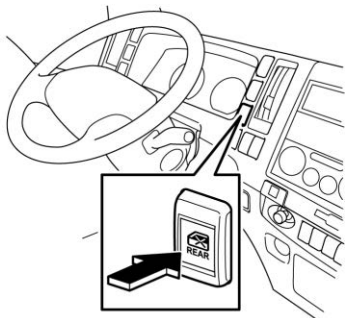
Rear Power Window Switch

The window glass will move downward while you are pushing the bottom part of the switch.

To Close a Rear Window

The window glass will move upward while you are pushing the top part of the switch.

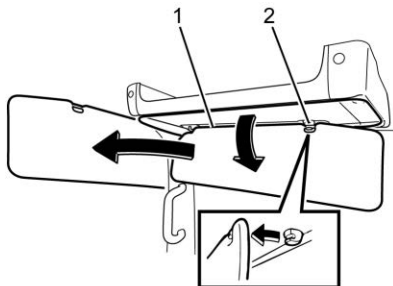
To Lock Rear Power Windows



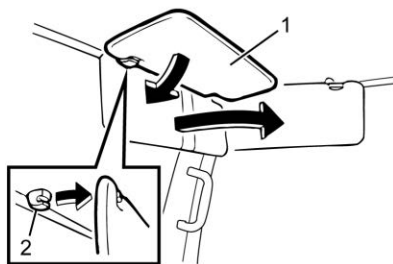
Rear Power Window Lock Switch

If you push the rear power window lock switch, only the driver window and front passenger window will open. To cancel the rear power window lock, push the switch again. Use the rear power window lock switch to "LOCK" the rear power windows. By doing so, you can prevent passengers from operating the rear power windows.

Sun Visors



Driver Side



Passenger Side

The sun visor (1) protects your eyes in strong sunlight. Use it when sunlight is too bright. To reduce side glare, unhook (2) the sun visor (1) and swing it around to the side. Make sure to fold up the sun visor after use.

Seats and Restraints

Front Seats

Seat Position	21
---------------------	----

Rear Seats

Rear Seats (Crew Cab Only)	25
----------------------------------	----

Seat Belts

Seat Belts	25
Three-Point Seat Belt	27
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy	29
Lap Belt	29
Seat Belt Extender	30
Safety System Check	30
Seat Belt Care	31

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems	32
-------------------------------	----

Front Seats

Seat Position

Warning

Use caution when adjusting the seat, as failure to do so could cause injury. You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Never allow children to adjust their seats themselves; an adult should adjust the seat for occupants who are children. You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Adjust the seat only before you start driving. Adjusting the seat while the vehicle is in motion must be avoided not only because the unlocked seat will move back and forth unstably, preventing you from taking the correct position, but might also cause you to lose control of

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the vehicle, possibly resulting in an accident. You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Try to move the seat without unlatching it after making adjustments to check that it is completely locked. A loosely locked seat may move unexpectedly and your position might then become unstable; this could lead to an accident. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service if you find that your seat adjusters do not latch. In addition, the seat belt will not operate properly if the seatback is not completely locked. You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Driving with the seat excessively reclined could be very dangerous in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Raise the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

seatback, and apply the seat belt correctly while sitting straight in the seat. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

Do not place a cushion or similar object between your back and the seatback. Doing so not only affects the stability of your driving position but also prevents the seat belt from working effectively in the event of a collision. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

Do not place any objects under the seat. If there are any objects under the seat, the seat could be locked in an improper position. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

Before making adjustments, check that the seat rails are free of anything that could obstruct the locking of the seat. Be careful that your hand or foot does not become trapped in the seat or rails when adjusting the seat. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

When adjusting the seat, be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or objects. Doing so could cause injury to passengers, or damage objects. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

Make sure not to hit passengers or luggage when adjusting your seat. You and others could be seriously injured.

 Warning

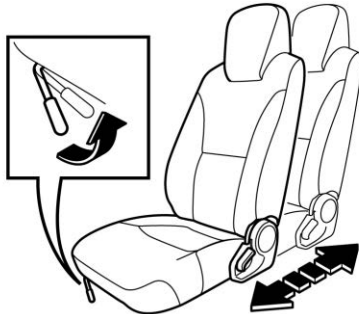
When adjusting the seat, or when getting up from the seat, do not put your hand or other objects under the seat or near moving parts. Doing so could cause injury or damage to objects.

Driver's Seat

The driver's seat must be adjusted so that when you sit well back in the seat, you can fully press the pedals without moving your back from the seatback, and you can operate the steering wheel easily and freely. After making adjustments, check that the seat is completely locked.

Adjusting the seat for a correct driving posture is a fundamental part of safe driving.

Forward/backward Adjustment



While raising the unlock lever, move the seat forward or backward. Release the lever when the seat is in the desired position. After making adjustments, try to move the seat back and forth to check that it is fully locked.

Reclining Adjustment

Warning

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, an occupied reclining seat should not be reclined any more than needed for comfort. The seatback and seat belts provide best

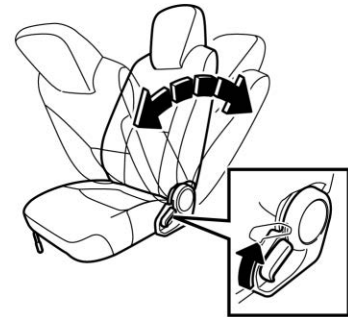
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

restraint only when the rider is sitting well back and straight up in the seat. (The lap belt is designed to spread the force of a collision over the hipbone. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. Therefore, in the event of a collision, the risk of personal injury will increase with increasing recline of the seatback). You and others could be seriously injured.

Warning

Do not adjust the reclining seatback on the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The seatback could jerk and cause a loss of control. You and others could be seriously injured.

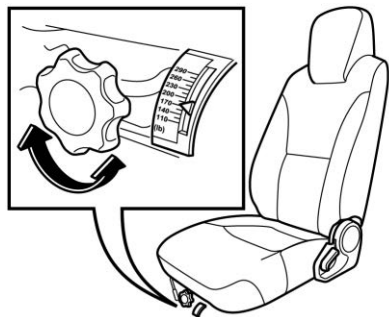


To recline the seatback, raise the seatback tilt lever and gently lean back to the desired position.

To move the seatback forward, lean forward with your back slightly clear of the seatback and raise the lever. After making adjustments, check that the seatback is fully locked.

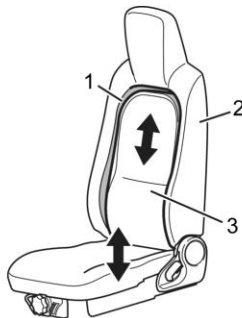
Suspension Adjustment

Avoid making any kind of contact with the pointer on the scale. Doing so may result in damage to the pointer, preventing appropriate weight adjustments from being possible.



Before sitting on the seat, use the knob to adjust the suspension to suit your weight. Turn the knob clockwise to move the pointer down the scale and counterclockwise to move it up the scale. The pointer should be alongside your weight on the scale.

The range of adjustment is 50-130 kg (110-290 lbs). If your weight is outside this range, the suspension may not be fully effective. However, you will be able to sit in the correct position for driving.



Avoid inserting fingers or objects between the inner (3) and outer (2) seatback, as doing so may prevent the seat suspension from operating properly.

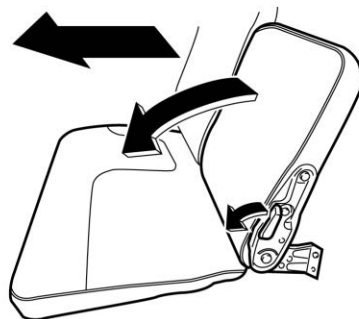
Passenger's Seat/Center Seat

Warning

Baggage must not be placed on the center seat. If the baggage falls on the floor when braking, it may prevent the driver from operating the pedals. You and others could be seriously injured.



Passenger's Seat



Center Seat

You can tip the seatback forward if you pull forward the lever at the side of the seatback. Normally, you should keep the seatback in the raised position.

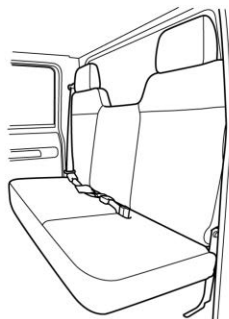
Rear Seats

Rear Seats (Crew Cab Only)

Do not remove the seat cushion except when taking out or stowing onboard tools.

Warning

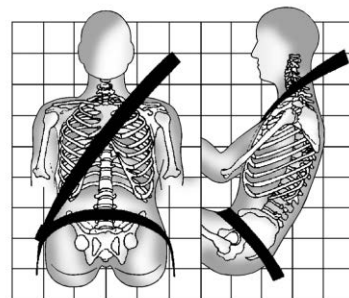
Do not drive with the seat cushion removed. The seat would not be stable, which could lead to an accident. You and others could be seriously injured.



The rear seat headrests are not adjustable.

Do not use the rear seats with the headrests removed during driving.

Seat Belts



The protection provided by seat belts might be significantly reduced if they are not fastened properly; in certain cases, improperly fastened seat belts can even play a role in causing injury to the wearer. Seat belts must be worn not only by the driver but also by the passenger(s) before the vehicle starts moving. You should be fully acquainted with the proper use of seat belts and important points to be respected as described in the following pages. Familiarizing yourself with the correct use of seat belts is essential for your safety.

 Warning

To help reduce the risk of personal injury in collisions or sudden maneuvers, use the seat belts following these instructions on their proper use, maintenance, and use with child restraint systems.

Seat belts must always be fastened BEFORE starting to drive.

Seat belts provide full protection only when the driver and passenger(s) fasten them while sitting upright and fully back on the seat.

Wearing a seat belt with the seatback excessively reclined could be very dangerous in a collision or sudden stop since the occupant may slide under the belt and be seriously injured. Seat belts work best only when the occupant is sitting well back and straight up in the seat.

Be sure to insert the latch plate into the buckle until a click is heard. An incompletely inserted latch plate is dangerous in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not run the seat belt over your face, chin or neck.

Wear the seat belt as low as possible around the hips, not around the waist. A seat belt running over the waist would press the abdomen with a strong force and could increase the likelihood of injuries in a collision or sudden stop.

Do not use a seat belt for a small child if the belt is on or very close to the child's neck or chin. Also, do not use a seat belt if it does not fit snugly over the child's hips because restraining the child under those conditions could be dangerous in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Instead, use an appropriate child restraint system available on the market. For further details, please contact your dealer.

Use a child restraint system that fits the size of the infant or child. Install the system according to the manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Children who have outgrown child restraint systems should use the vehicle's seat belts.

Remove any twists in the seat belt before fastening it. A seat belt with twists will not provide full protection because it cannot disperse shocks efficiently in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

Too much slack could increase the amount of injury because the belt would not be able to properly restrain you in an accident.

Do not put the lap portion of a seat belt over any armrest.

Do not wear a shoulder belt under your arm nearest the door.

Do not let a buckle release button face downward or inward.

Expectant mothers or people suffering from chest or abdominal conditions should check with their doctor for specific recommendations about wearing seat belts.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not use one seat belt for more than one person. If worn by more than one person, the seat belt would not work effectively in a collision or sudden stop.

Have seat belts inspected and, if necessary, replaced by the nearest dealer when the webbing becomes frayed or worn and/or when the buckle or other mechanical parts fail to work properly.

If your vehicle has been involved in a collision, the seat belts worn at the time may have lost their original strength due to impact even if they appear intact. These seat belts must be inspected and, if necessary, replaced by the nearest dealer.

Be careful to keep the buckles and retractors free of dust and foreign matter. (This may jam the retractor or damage the belt.)

Do not let the belt system become damaged by the door or seat.

(Continued)

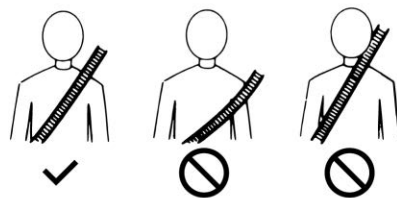
Warning (Continued)

Do not let the belt twist while it is rewinding: it may cause the retractor to jam so it will not rewind further. If it is not fully rewound, the belt cannot be pulled out. Should the belt jam, you may be able to release it by working the belt in and out until the belt rewinds far enough to unlock. However, if the belt remains jammed or other parts of the restraint system do not work properly, have your dealer service it.

Wearing seat belts is a legal requirement. All other passengers must wear seat belts. The driver is responsible not only for wearing a seat belt himself/herself but also for prompting all passengers to wear their seat belts. It is necessary, however, to check with a doctor about the appropriateness of a seat belt for an expectant mother or a passenger with a chest/abdominal condition.

Three-Point Seat Belt**⚠ Warning**

The shoulder belt should be adequately positioned on your shoulder but should not touch your neck and/or face. The shoulder belt could harm you in a collision or sudden stop if it is in contact with your neck and/or face.



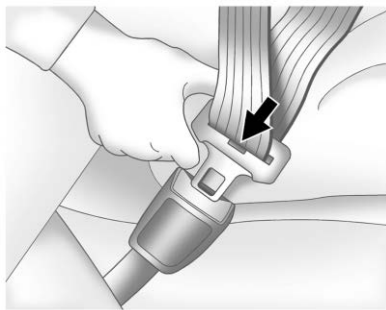
Every seat except the center seat on your vehicle is equipped with a three-point seat belt. The seat belt extends or retracts freely if the wearer moves slowly, but it locks and

28 Seats and Restraints

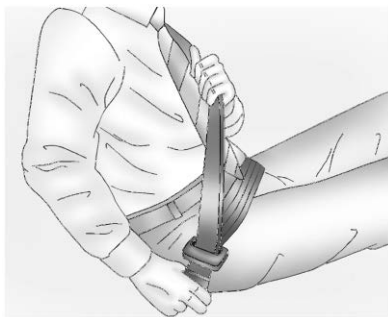
restrains the occupant during forward force caused by the occupant's body following a strong shock.

To Fasten:

1. Sit on the seat in the correct driving position.



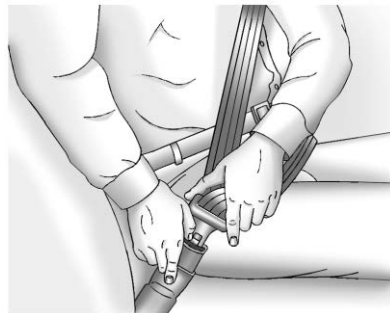
2. Pull out the seat belt holding the latch plate. After checking that there are no twists in the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. If the retractor locks before the latch plate reaches the buckle, let the belt retract slightly, then withdraw it slower than before.



3. To reduce the risk of sliding under the belt during a collision, position the belt across your lap as low on your hips as possible and adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the "shoulder" portion upward through the latch plate.

The lap-shoulder belt is designed to lock during a sudden stop or impact. At other times it should move freely.

To Unfasten:



Push the button on the buckle. As the belt automatically retracts, let it be taken up slowly by holding on to the latch plate until the belt is fully retracted.

While being automatically retracted, the seat belt could damage a nearby window or interior trim unless the latch plate is properly held. Hold the latch plate to ensure that the belt is taken up slowly.

Before closing the door, check that the retracted seat belt is taut. A slack belt could become trapped in the door or seat rail.

When the passenger's seat belt is fully taken up (or not pulled out), check that the stopper is holding the belt in a fully taut state.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function

The three-point seat belts are provided with an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) function.

The ELR normally allows the seat belt to move in and out freely as the occupant moves. However, it locks the seat belt to restrain the occupant when a forward force resulting from a collision or sudden stop acts on the occupant.

The ELR also locks the seat belt when the belt is pulled out quickly. If this happens, allow it to retract once and then pull it out slowly.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

⚠ Warning

Unless the seat belt is correctly worn, it may dig into the abdomen in the event of hard braking or a collision, harming
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

not only the expectant mother but also the unborn child, putting them both in danger of serious injuries or death.



An expectant mother or a person who is ill riding in the vehicle must also wear a seat belt. In light of the risk that the seat belt will apply pressure to the abdomen, chest and shoulders in the event of a collision, however, an expectant mother or person who is ill should get advice from a physician beforehand.

- An expectant mother should use a three-point seat belt.

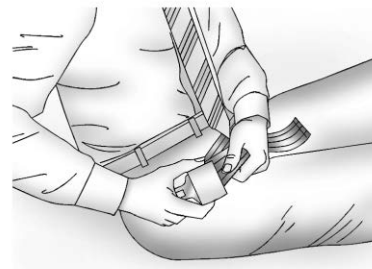
- An expectant mother should position the lap belt snugly as low as possible on the hips (not across the abdomen). Also, she should fasten the shoulder belt so it rests on her chest, not on her abdomen.

Lap Belt

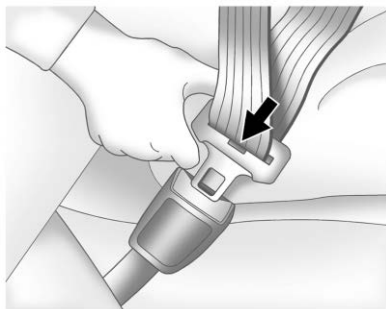
The center seat lap belt has no retractor, but should be positioned, worn, and released as described below.

To Fasten:

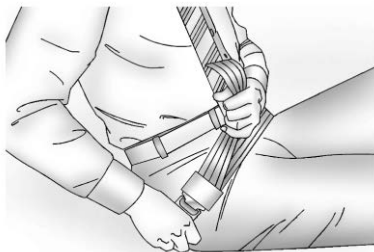
1. Sit on the seat in the correct position.



2. Pull out the latch plate side of the belt a little longer than necessary. Placing the latch plate at right angles with the belt makes this easier.

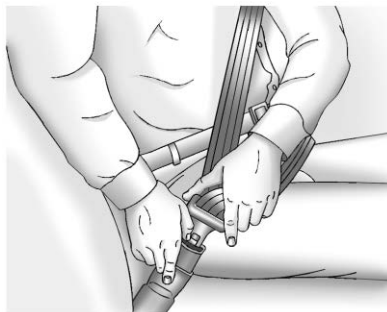


3. After checking that there are no twists in the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.



4. Position the seat belt across the lap as low as possible on the hips. Pull the fold-back end of the belt (upper side) until the belt is adjusted to a snug fit.

To Unfasten:



Push the button on the buckle to unfasten the belt.

The center seat belt (length-adjustable two-point belt) is designed so that it cannot be connected with any of the window-side seat belts (three-point seat belts with ELR).

Seat Belt Extender

If the vehicle's seat belt will fasten around you, you should use it. But if a seat belt isn't long enough to fasten, your dealer can

order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. The extender will be just for you, and just for the seat in your vehicle that you choose. Do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. To wear it, just attach it to the regular seat belt.

Safety System Check

Now and then check that the belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, anchorages and guide loops work properly; look for loose parts or damage (without disassembly) that could keep the restraint system from doing its job. Have a belt assembly replaced if the webbing has been cut or otherwise damaged. Replace belts, retractors, and hardware used in all but a minor collision. Also, restraint systems should be replaced and anchorages properly repaired if they were in areas damaged by a collision, whether the belt was in use or not. If there is any question, replace the belt system. Damage, whether visible or not, could result in a serious personal injury in the event of an accident.

Seat Belt Care

Warning

Keep belts clean and dry.

Clean seat belts only with mild soaps and lukewarm water.

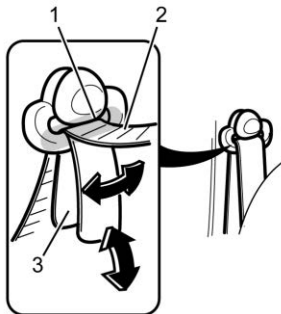
Do not bleach or dye belts since this may severely weaken them.

Seat belt webbing can lose its strength when bleached or redyed, or when cleaned using gasoline, paint thinners or other volatile substances.

Do not disassemble the seat belt mechanism in order to remove any foreign material or objects that may have entered the buckle. Instead, arrange for inspection and maintenance to be carried out by your dealer.

A dirty seat belt can develop retracting problems, and for this reason, regular inspection and upkeep are required.

Cleaning a Seat Belt Fold-Back Fitting Portion



1. Seat belt fold-back fitting portion
2. Seat belt
3. Cloth

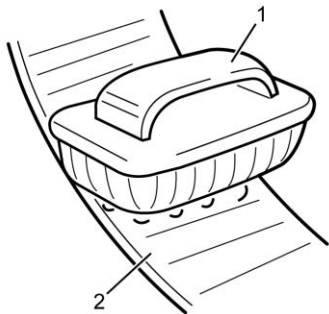
Cleaning a Seat Belt Fold-Back Fitting Portion:

1. Fold a piece of cotton cloth, absorbent gauze, or the like of approximately 50 mm (2 in) in width into a rectangle.
2. Mix one part neutral detergent into approximately twenty parts warm water.

3. Wet the cloth in the detergent mixture, pass it through the fold-back fitting portion of the belt, and slide it back and forth and laterally until dirt can no longer be seen.
4. Remove the cloth, remove moisture from the fitting portion of the belt using a dry cloth, and then allow it to dry naturally out of direct sunlight.
5. Check to be sure the seat belt retracts and pulls out correctly.

Avoid using anything like a tool to pass the cloth through the fold-back fitting portion or try to remove stubborn dirt. Using such an object can result in damage to plastic parts or seat belt webbing.

Cleaning a Seat Belt Webbing



1. Brush
2. Seat belt

Cleaning a Belt Webbing:

1. Fully extract the belt and examine for any difference in color between the front and back surfaces.
2. Mix one part neutral detergent into approximately twenty parts warm water.
3. Wet a nail brush or another similar brush having soft bristles (of nylon or the like) in warm water, and use this to clean away dirt.

4. Wipe the seat belt dry using a dry cloth, and then allow it to dry naturally out of direct sunlight.
5. Check to be sure the seat belt retracts and pulls out correctly.

If the above-described upkeep operations do not improve the operation of the seat belt through the retractor, there is a possibility that the belt is making contact with the door pillar trim. In this case, arrange for inspection and maintenance to be carried out by your dealer.

If the belt is not winding and unwinding correctly, or if inspection reveals problems such as loose mountings, metal parts deformation, webbing damage, fraying or discoloration, arrange for replacement to be carried out by your dealer.

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems

 Warning

Children small enough for child restraints (as indicated on the label of such restraints), including booster seats, should

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

always be transported in them. Children who have outgrown child restraint systems should wear seat belts. The lap belt should be snug and positioned low on the abdomen so that it is below the top of the hipbone. Otherwise, the belt could intrude into the child's abdomen during an accident and cause personal injury. When a child has grown enough so that the shoulder belt can be worn, a seating position with a shoulder belt should be chosen whenever possible.

Any unrestrained child could be injured by striking the vehicle's interior or by ejection from the vehicle during an accident or driving maneuver. Never allow a child to be held by another occupant instead of being properly restrained. If not properly restrained, the child could strike the vehicle interior or be crushed by the person holding the child, or by other occupants.

Be sure to follow all installation and use instructions that come with any child restraint system.

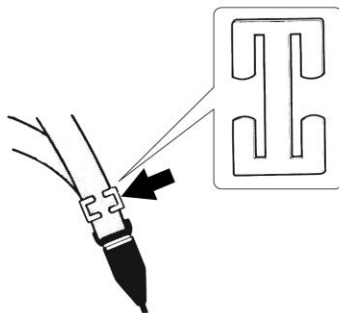
Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats either by the lap belt, or the lap portion of the lap-shoulder belt at that seating position. The child must also be secured within the restraint by the means provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If the child or the child restraint is not properly secured, the child risks personal injury in the event of a collision.

Using a Lap Belt That Has No Retractor

When securing a child restraint with the center seat lap belt, pull the excess webbing through the belt's adjustment feature, then take these steps:

- Once installed, push and pull the child restraint in all directions to be sure it is secure. If it comes loose, flip the end of the belt with the adjustment feature over before rebuckling.
- If the child restraint is still not secure, use the outboard seating position in the vehicle and contact your dealer and the child restraint manufacturer for help.
- Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Installation on Outboard Seat



A seat belt locking clip is required for installation of a child restraint system on the outboard seat of this vehicle. A locking clip may usually be obtained where child restraints are sold, or by contacting your dealer for assistance. Make sure the locking clip is identical to the one shown on this page. Until you have the clip, use the child restraint system only in the center seat.

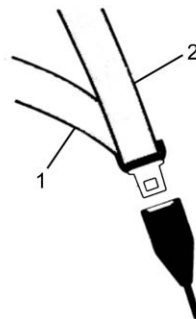
Warning

To help avoid personal injury or death during a collision or sudden maneuver, always thread both the lap and shoulder

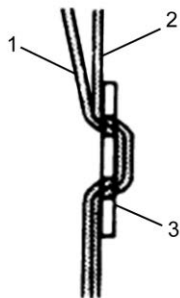
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

belt through the locking clip when securing a child restraint on the outboard seat. If the clip is not used or installed properly, the child restraint may move or tip over when your vehicle turns or stops abruptly.



Secure the child restraint with the lap belt portion (1) of the seat belt in accordance with the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Then thread both the lap (1) and shoulder belt (2) portions through the locking clip. Push and pull the child restraint in all directions to be sure it is secure.



**Locking Clip Attached to Seat Belt –
Side View**

1. Lap Belt
2. Shoulder Belt
3. Locking Clip

When your child restraint is not installed, remove the locking clip to permit normal use of the lap-shoulder belt. Keep the locking clip in the glove box to help prevent its loss.

Child Restraint with Top Tether



Warning

We do not recommend using a child restraint that requires the use of a top tether. There is no appropriate place to attach a top tether anchor behind the seat in this vehicle.

Storage

Storage Compartments

Storage Compartments	35
Instrument Panel Storage	35
Glove Box	36
Cupholders	37
Rear Storage	37

Additional Storage Features

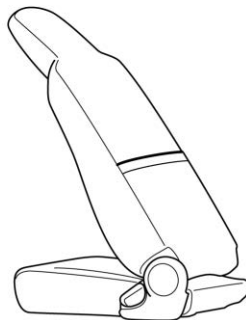
Shopping Bag Hooks	38
--------------------------	----

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Information on Loading the Vehicle	38
---	----

Storage Compartments

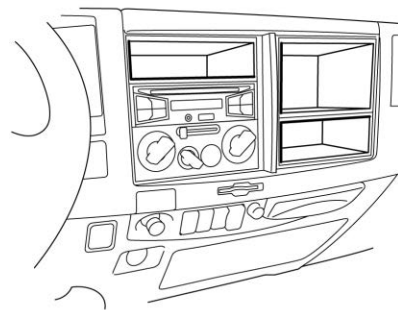
Seat Back Pocket



Use the seat back pocket for storing items such as vehicle registration documents or owner manuals.

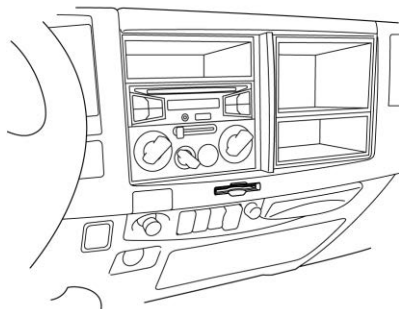
Instrument Panel Storage

Small Article Storage Pockets



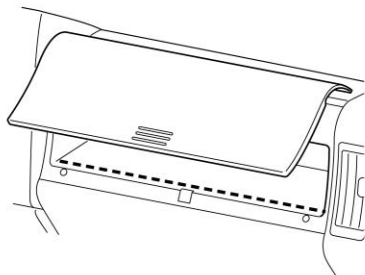
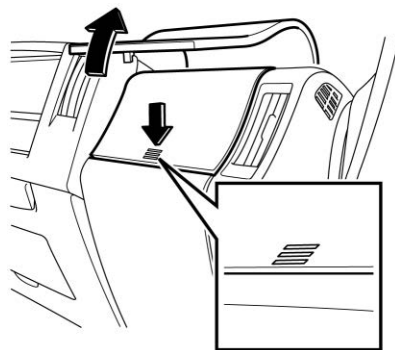
Use the storage pockets for storing small articles.

Card Holder



Use this to hold your cards.

Glove Box



Press on the central mark to lock and unlock the lid.

Warning

For safety, close the glove box during driving. There is a risk of injury from the open lid or items stored in the glove box.

You and others could be seriously injured.

The glove box lid will automatically spring open when it is unlocked. Do not put your face or head near the lid.

Warning

Do not leave eyeglasses or a lighter in the vehicle. Lighters may explode and plastic lenses or frames may deform or crack if the interior temperature becomes very hot.

You and others could be seriously injured.

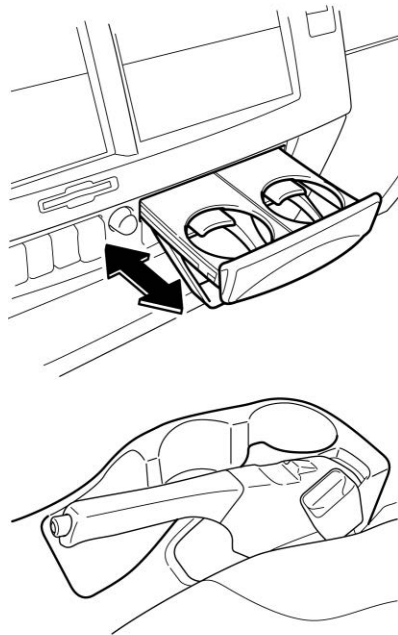
Caution

When closing the glove box lid, do not allow stored items to pass the line shown in the illustration. The glove box lid may break if it is closed when items inside have passed the line and are sticking out from the box.

Do not place items such as vehicle registration documents or owner manuals in the glove box, but store them in the seat back pocket located on the back side of the driver seat.

Refer to *Storage Compartments* ⇨ 35.

Cupholders



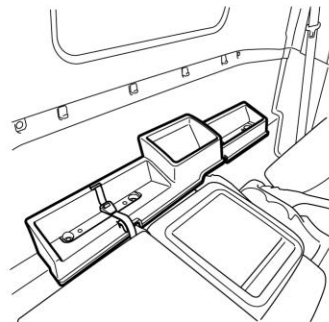
Pull the cupholder towards you to open it.

Do not place a cup that is too full in the cupholder. Spillages could cause damage to the radio and other electrical circuits. If there is a spill, wipe it up immediately with a dry cloth.

Do not tilt the cab with a filled cup in the cupholder. There may be a danger of the cupholder breaking if the weight on each holder exceeds 0.75 kg (1.65 lbs). Doing so may also result in damage to the radio or other electronic components.

Use the cupholders for storing small articles or cups.

Rear Storage



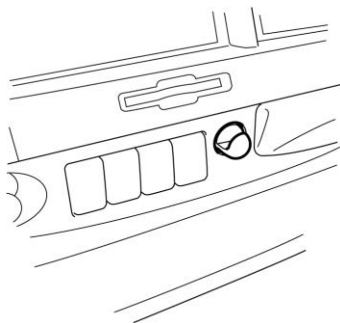
Single Cab Model Only**⚠ Warning**

Do not use the back panel tray to hold any object that may fly or fall out during vehicle operation. Doing so would be dangerous.

Items may fly or fall out when the cab is tilted.

You and others could be seriously injured.

The center area of the back panel tray can be used as a storage receptacle. The warning triangle and fire extinguisher can be carried in both sides.

Additional Storage Features
Shopping Bag Hooks

This can be used to hold plastic shopping bags. Do not hang anything weighing over 3 kg (6.6 lbs) or the hook will break.

Information on Loading the Vehicle**Overloading****⚠ Warning**

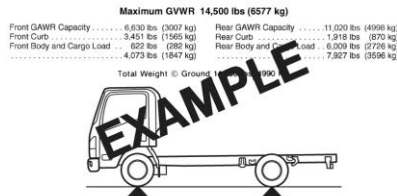
Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control and personal injury or death, either by causing component failures or by affecting vehicle handling. It can also shorten the service life of your vehicle.

The components of your truck are designed to provide satisfactory service if the vehicle is not loaded in excess of either the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) or the maximum front and rear gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs). These ratings are listed on the "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate", which is located on the left side rear pillar panel below the striker (single cab) or on the left center pillar panel beside the shoulder seat belt anchor (crew cab).

Gross vehicle weight (GVW) is the weight of the originally equipped vehicle and all items added to it after it has left the factory. This would include bodies, lift gates, refrigeration systems, winches, booms, etc., the driver and all occupants, and the load the vehicle is carrying. The GVW must not exceed the GVWR. Also, gross weight on each of the front and rear axles must not exceed the front and rear GAWRs respectively.

Your dealer can advise you of the proper loading conditions for your vehicle. Using selected heavier suspension components for added durability may not increase any of the weight ratings shown on the "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate."

Model	Maximum GVWR kg (lb)	Front GAWR Capacity kg (lb)	Rear GAWR Capacity kg (lb)
3500	5 443 (12,000)	2 204 (4,860)	4 010 (8,840)
4500	6 577 (14,500)	3 007 (6,630)	4 998 (11,020)



Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights

The weight of the cargo load must be properly distributed over both the front and rear axles. The "Vehicle Certification and

Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate" shows the maximum weight that the front axle can carry (front GAWR). It also shows the maximum weight that the rear axle can carry (rear GAWR). The GVWR is the maximum permissible loaded weight of the vehicle and takes into account the capabilities of the engine, transmission, frame, springs, brakes, axles and tires. Actual loads at the front and the rear axles can only be determined by weighing the vehicle. This can be done at highway weigh stations or other such places. See your dealer for help. The cargo load should be distributed on both sides of the center line as equally as possible.

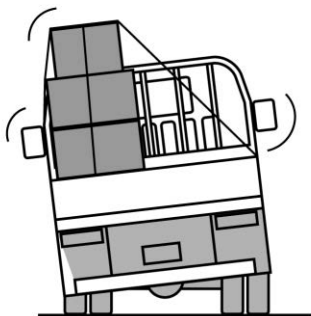
Tires

The tires on your truck must be of the proper size and properly inflated for the load that you are carrying. The “Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate” shows the originally equipped tire size and recommended inflation pressures. The tire inflation tables show the load limits for various size tires at various inflation pressures.

For the vehicle plate location, see *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ 237.

See “Tire Load and Inflation Table” under *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 201.

Load Cargo Correctly



Warning

Overloading can result in a crash because it places too much strain on the wheel studs with the result that they break and the wheels come off.

(Continued)

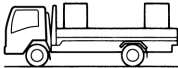
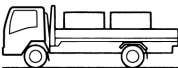
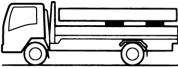
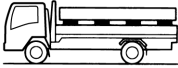
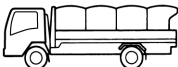
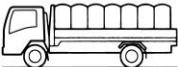
Warning (Continued)

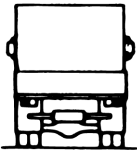
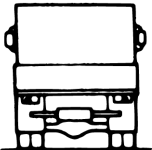
The weight of the payload must be limited within the gross vehicle weight (GVW) rating and distributed over the front and rear axles so as not to exceed the axle capacities.

It is extremely dangerous to overload the vehicle or to load the vehicle with the cargo positioned on one side. Load the vehicle correctly, observing the maximum loading capacity.

Incorrect loading can make the cargo unstable. It can also cause an overload condition confined to a small area, resulting in damage to the cargo bed and frame.

Overloading places undue strain on vehicle parts. It can shorten the vehicle's service life and cause a crash. You and others could be seriously injured.

Cargo loading caution	Incorrect	Correct
Do not place cargo only at the front or only at the rear. Distribute it evenly.		
When using supports under cargo, position them uniformly along the cargo.		
To the greatest extent possible, do not allow long cargo to protrude beyond the rear edge of the cargo bed. Rather, use supports to raise it at an angle. Avoid supporting it using just the front guard frame and the rear edge of the cargo bed.		
Use ropes and tarpaulins to secure the cargo so it does not fall off the cargo bed. Use rubber bands or bungee cords to prevent the tarpaulins from flapping in the wind.		

Cargo loading caution	Incorrect	Correct
Avoid loading cargo too high. It can cause the vehicle to tip sideways when it catches side winds and when turning the vehicle.		

Loading Equipment



Do not load equipment from the rear of the cargo bed. The frame may become deformed when equipment is loaded from the rear of the cargo bed. In addition, the

frame may become deformed even when loading equipment that has a weight under the maximum loading capacity.

When loading equipment, a device for securing the cargo bed is required. Use a car carrier or attach a rear support stand. If you have any questions, contact your dealer.

Make Sure There is No Flammable Material between the Cab and Cargo Bed

Caution

Be careful not to allow a sheet, canvas top, or the ends of ropes or rubber straps to touch or come close to the engine or exhaust pipe. During vehicle operation, the engine's heat could set them on fire. Carefully secure the sheet, canvas top, or the ends of ropes or rubber straps.

Do not Carry Fuel and Spray Cans in the Cab

Danger

It is extremely dangerous to carry fuel and spray cans in the cab. If such a container were to ignite or rupture, it could cause a fire or explosion. You and others could be seriously injured.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment	43
Horn	44
Windshield Wiper/Washer	44
Power Outlets	45

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators	47
Instrument Cluster	48
Speedometer	48
Odometer	48
Trip Odometer	48
Tachometer	49
Fuel Gauge	49
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	50
Seat Belt Reminders	50
Battery Warning Light	51
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)	51
Service Vehicle Soon Light	51
Brake System Warning Light	52
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light	54
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light	54
Engine Oil Pressure Light	55
Low Fuel Warning Light	55

Cab Tilt Warning Light	55
Reduced Engine Power Light	56
High-Beam On Light	56
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) Indicator Light	56
Cruise Control Light	56

Vehicle Messages

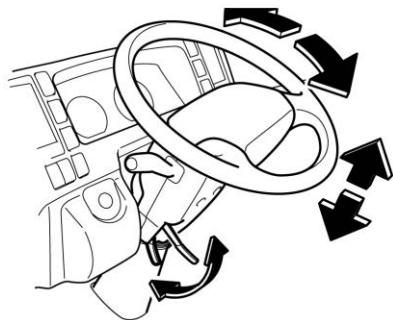
Warning Buzzers	57
-----------------------	----

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

Warning

- Adjust the position of the steering wheel before you start driving.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury, apply force to the steering wheel to make certain the steering column is firmly locked before driving. Also, do not try to tilt or adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. If these steps are not followed, the steering column could move suddenly while the vehicle is in motion which could cause a temporary loss of steering control which may result in personal injury or death.

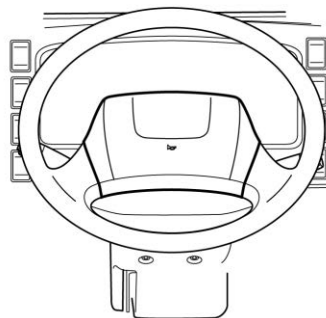


The steering wheel is adjustable up and down as well as forward and backward.

Before adjusting, position the seat as desired.

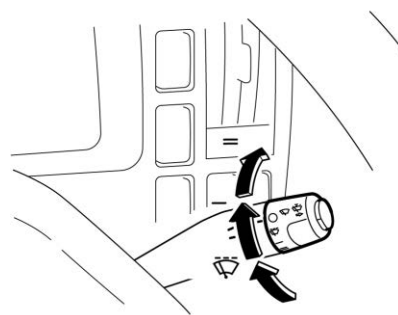
1. Lift the lock lever toward you to unlock the steering column.
2. Sit in the correct driving position, and then move the steering wheel up and down and forward and backward to select the optimum steering wheel position.
3. Firmly lock the steering wheel at the selected position by moving the lock lever to the lock position.

Horn



To sound the horn, press the pad with a horn symbol on the steering wheel.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



To use the windshield wiper and washer switches, the engine control switch must be in the ON position.

The windshield wiper switch has the following positions, which correspond to the states of the wiper.

○ : Stopped.

⏏ : Intermittent, light rain.

— : Low speed, moderate rain.

== : High speed, heavy rain.

If the wiper frequently stops during operation, contact your nearest Dealer.

Before operating the wiper, ensure that the wiper rubber is not stuck on to the windshield. If the wiper rubber is stuck to the windshield and you still operate the wiper, the wiper may break or the wiper motor may fail.

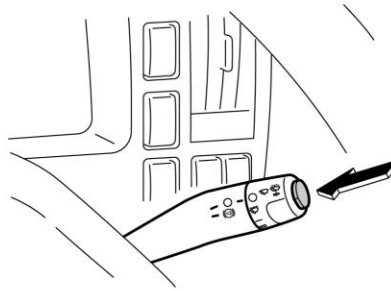
Clear ice or packed snow from the wiper blades before using the wipers. Carefully loosen or thaw wipers that are frozen to the windshield.

Do not operate the wiper on a dry windshield surface. Otherwise, the windshield surface may sustain damage.

Windshield Washer

Warning

At extremely low temperatures, washer fluid may freeze on the windshield after being sprayed, obstructing your forward view. In such a case, warm up the windshield before using the windshield washer.



Windshield washer fluid is sprayed over the windshield when this switch is pressed. At the same time, the windshield wiper operates.

To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the button on the end of the combination switch lever. The spray will continue as long as you hold in the button.

If windshield washer fluid does not come out in sufficient quantity, immediately release the switch. Otherwise, the windshield surface may sustain damage.

If windshield washer fluid does not come out, release the windshield washer switch immediately. Otherwise the motor may seize up.

Do not hold the switch pressed for more than 30 seconds. Otherwise, the washer pump may sustain damage.

Check the washer fluid level regularly. Do it often when the weather is bad.

Use a good quality windshield antifreeze to help prevent freezing damage, and for better cleaning.

When the vehicle is used in a cold-climate region or during the winter:

- Use washer fluid with appropriate concentration for the season to prevent frozen fluid.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir only 3/4 full to allow for expansion if the temperature should fall low enough to freeze the solution.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 165 for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Power Outlets

Warning

- The maximum allowable load of the accessory power outlet is 120W (10A). If you subject the accessory power outlet to more than the allowable

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

load, the wiring may overheat and cause a fire. Use the accessory power outlet within the allowable load.

- The power source for the accessory power outlet is 12V. If electrical equipment other than 12V are connected, a malfunction due to overheating or fire may occur.
- Be sure to insert the plug of the electrical appliance all the way into the accessory power outlet. Using an appliance when the plug is not completely inserted could cause abnormal heat generation and may result in the vehicle's fuses blowing.

⚠ Warning

- If foreign matter enters the accessory power outlet, or if water or drinks contact it, it could be damaged. Also, do not insert fingers or any metallic objects into the accessory power outlet.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

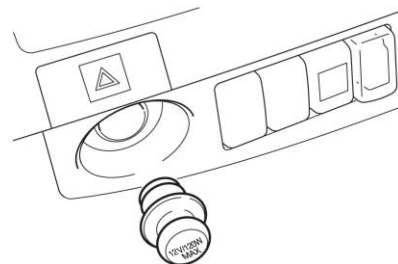
- As the internal part of the accessory power outlet may become deformed depending on the size of the plug used, do not attempt to force the plug into the accessory power outlet. In this case, replace the accessory power outlet.

Using the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is stopped will drain the battery.

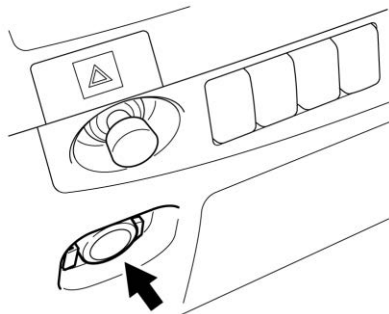
When not in use, be sure to attach the cap.

When inserting or removing the plug of an electrical appliance, turn the electrical appliance off or place the engine control switch in the "LOCK" position.

When using accessory power outlets, total maximum electrical load must not exceed 120W (10A). Always turn off any electrical equipment when not in use.

Type 1

The accessory power outlet can be used when the engine control switch is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY. Use the accessory power outlet to supply power to commercially available vehicle accessories, etc. Remove the cap to use.

Type 2

You can plug in auxiliary electrical equipment. Just flip the outlet cover open from the left edge of the cover and follow the proper installation instructions that are included with any electrical equipment you install. These circuits are protected by a fuse and have maximum current loads.

When using accessory power outlets, total maximum electrical load must not exceed 120W. Always turn off any electrical equipment when not in use.

Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods will drain your battery.

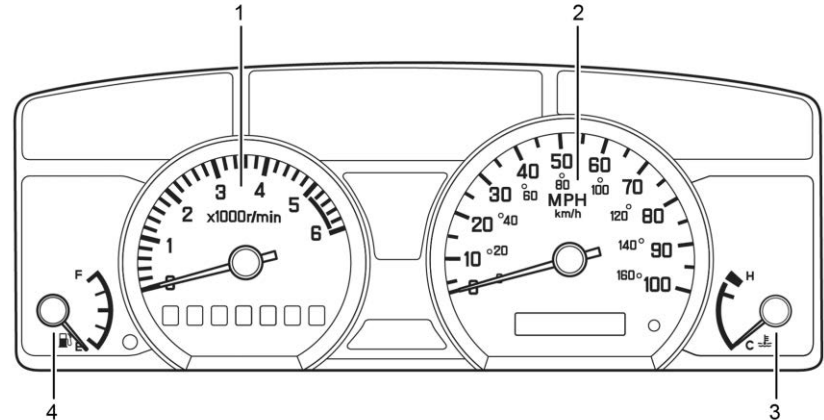
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

For safety reasons, do not place packages, tools, or other items in the driver's area that may restrict access to the controls or sight of the gauges.

Instrument Cluster



- 1. Tachometer ⇨ 49
- 2. Speedometer ⇨ 48
- 3. Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge
⇨ 50
- 4. Fuel Gauge ⇨ 49

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

Odometer

ODO

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

Each time the reset knob is pressed with the engine control switch in the ON position, the odometer/trip meter shows ODO, TRIP A, and TRIP B in this sequence. With the key removed, the odometer and trip meter continue to indicate for about five minutes.

Odometer Check Switch

Press the Odometer Check switch to display the odometer and trip meter mileage after the key is turned off.

Trip Odometer

TRIP

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset. Press the trip odometer reset stem next to the odometer to switch between the odometer and trip odometer.

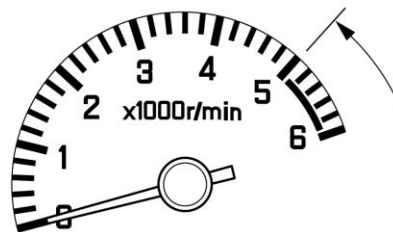
To reset the trip odometer to zero, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem while TRIP A or TRIP B is displayed. The engine control switch should be in the ON position.

When the battery is disconnected, TRIP A and TRIP B will be reset to zero. The per trip fuel economy is also reset by the TRIP B reset.

When you turn the engine control switch to the ON position, the odometer/trip odometer shows what was displayed the last time the engine control switch was turned to LOCK or ACC.

To set the odometer to display each time you turn the engine control switch to the ON position, turn the engine control switch to LOCK or ACC while the odometer is displayed. With the reset stem pressed, turn the engine control switch to the ON position and then within three seconds, turn the engine control switch back to the LOCK or ACC position. Follow the same procedure to cancel the setting.

Tachometer

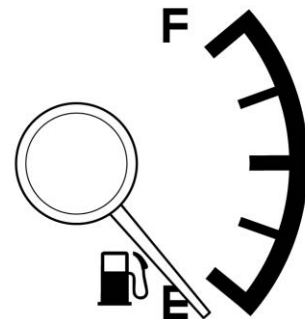


The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). The red zone indicates a range of dangerous engine speeds beyond permissible levels. Do not drive your vehicle with the needle in the red zone.

Caution

Exercise extreme care when shifting down on a steep downslope. The engine speed may exceed the critical speed, which can damage the vehicle.

Fuel Gauge

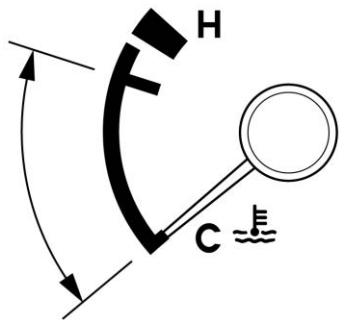


With the engine control switch in the ON position, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

To check the fuel level with the engine control switch in the LOCK position, press the Odometer Check switch.

Fill the tank well before it approaches empty. After filling up the fuel tank, it takes awhile for the fuel gauge needle to stabilize after the engine control switch is turned to the ON position. If the fuel tank is filled while the engine is off, but the engine control switch is in the ON position, the fuel gauge needle takes awhile to show the correct reading.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



With the engine control switch in the ON position, this gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. “C” means cold while “H” means hot. If the engine overheats, the engine coolant temperature warning light comes on and a warning buzzer sounds. During operation, the needle should stay in the safety zone. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 162 and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ 54.

Warning

If the engine coolant temperature gauge shows an overheat condition or you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating, continued operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in a fire and the risk of personal injury and severe vehicle damage. Take immediate action as outlined in *Engine Overheating*. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 162.

Caution

If the needle goes up above the upper limit and enters the H zone, the engine is likely to overheat. Immediately pull safely off the road out of the way of traffic and take the necessary actions to deal with engine overheating. If the needle nears the H zone but does not cross into it, this is not a problem, but check the engine coolant level in the reservoir. Add engine coolant as necessary.

Seat Belt Reminders

Seat Belt Warning Light

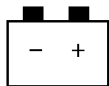
There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.



This warning light comes on and a warning buzzer sounds when the driver is not wearing the seat belt while the engine control switch is in the ON position.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph) with the seat belt unbuckled, the warning light will flash and the buzzer will continue to sound. The warning light will go out and the warning buzzer will stop when the driver buckles the seat belt.

Battery Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system (such as a loose or broken fan belt). Pull off to a safe place well clear of traffic and contact your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

Check and Corrective Action

1. Check to see if the fan belt is broken or loose.
2. If the fan belt is loose, adjust the tension.
3. If the fan belt is broken or there is no abnormality in the fan belt, see your dealer for service.

See *Battery - North America* ⇨ 169, *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ 205, and *Engine Drive Belt Routing* ⇨ 247.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)



This light should come on to show that it is working when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

If this light stays on or comes on while the engine is running, it indicates a malfunction with the engine electronic emission control system. Avoid driving at high speeds and have the vehicle inspected by your dealer.

If this light comes on when the fuel tank is empty, you do not need to have your vehicle serviced.

If this light comes on intermittently or continuously while driving, service is required. Even if the vehicle is drivable and does not require towing, see your dealer as

soon as possible. Continued driving without having the system serviced could cause damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and drivability.

Service Vehicle Soon Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine control switch is in the ON position, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, the vehicle control system may be malfunctioning. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

BRAKE

This light should come on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

If the light remains on after engine start up or comes on during operation of the vehicle, it means that there is something wrong with part of the brake system.

The brake system warning light comes on while the engine is running (after startup) in the following situations:

- Drop in the level of brake fluid (due to brake lining wear or fluid leakage).
- Abnormality in the charging system (such as an alternator malfunction or loose or split fan belt).
- Abnormality in the anti-lock brake system (ABS) and EBD functions. (The ABS warning light and brake system warning

light will illuminate at the same time.)
See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ 54.

To serve as a reminder, the light should stay on when the parking brake is not fully released, and the engine control switch is on. Have the system repaired if the light does not come on when it should. If this warning light does not go away, brake inspection and maintenance should be performed.

Check and Corrective Action

1. Check to see that the parking brake has been fully released. If it has, check the following:
2. Pull off the road and stop carefully. Remember that stopping distances may be longer, the pedal may be harder to push and go down farther than normal.
3. Check the brake fluid reservoir on the left side of the instrument panel. If low, add fluid as needed.
4. If the brake fluid is not low: Try out the brakes by starting and stopping on the shoulder of the road, then either drive cautiously at a safe speed to the nearest dealer for repair, if you judge driving to be safe; or have the vehicle towed to the

nearest dealer for repair. Continued driving without the necessary repairs could be dangerous.

If this warning light stays on, see your dealer.

The regular braking system is a split system designed so that one part will provide some braking if there is a loss of hydraulic pressure in the other part of the system.

Warning

If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, immediately stop the vehicle at a safe place well clear of traffic and contact your dealer for inspection. When the brake system warning light is illuminated, brake effectiveness may be decreased. When this happens, strongly press the brake pedal.

See *Brakes* ⇨ 166.

Parking Brake Light

BRAKE

This indicator light comes on when the parking brake lever is pulled with the engine control switch on.

This light also stays on when the parking brake is not fully released and the engine control switch is on. If this warning light stays on, see your dealer.

The illumination of the parking brake light does not necessarily ensure firm application of the parking brake. The parking brake lever must be sufficiently pulled up and locked.

Be careful not to drive the vehicle with the parking brake lever still pulled up.

Brake Low Vacuum Warning Light

BRAKE BOOSTER

This light should come on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started. If the light does not come on when the engine control switch is turned to ON, it could indicate a burned out bulb or a blown fuse. Have the system repaired if the light does not come on during this check.

The warning light and buzzer will come on simultaneously when the brake booster's vacuum or pressure becomes insufficient either during driving or when the engine control switch is in the ON position, or when there is an abnormality in the charging system, such as an alternator malfunction or loosening or splitting of the fan belt or whenever the hydraulic brake booster (HBB) becomes faulty. The warning buzzer will stop sounding when the parking brake is engaged.

On 4500, the brake low vacuum warning light and warning buzzer should come on to indicate low vacuum reserve for brake power assist. At the same time, the Back up Electric Vacuum Pump operates.

4500 models are equipped with a Back up Electric Vacuum Pump that will turn on if brake booster vacuum becomes insufficient.

If this happens while driving:

- Do not pump the brakes. The system is designed to stop the truck with reserve power assist if the pedal is held down. This reserve is greatly reduced each time you apply and release the brakes.
- Stopping distance may be longer.
- You may have to push much harder on the brake pedal.
- Have the vehicle repaired before you continue driving.

The buzzer stops when the selector lever is shifted to the P position.

Warning

Do not drive while the buzzer sounds as the brakes are not operating to their full capacity. You and others could be seriously injured.

**Antilock Brake System (ABS)
Warning Light**

ABS

This light comes on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after approximately three seconds. If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

This warning light comes on together with the brake system warning light whenever there is a problem in the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS). In this case, the ABS stops working but the brakes still function as ordinary service brakes.

 Warning

If this warning light comes on while driving, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place well clear of traffic and take the following actions.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

1. Stop the engine.
2. Restart the engine. Check if the ABS warning light comes on and then goes out. If it does, there is no problem. The ABS operates normally.
3. Move the vehicle slowly forward. Gradually increase the speed to 15 km/h (9 mph). If the light goes off, the ABS is normal.

If the light does not come on or go out, or comes on frequently, contact your dealer immediately and have the system repaired.

Even if a problem has occurred in the ABS, the brakes will still work as normal brakes. In this case, the ABS has no influence on the operation of the brake system.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ 52 and *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 137.

**Engine Coolant Temperature
Warning Light**



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

Caution

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 162.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated. If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Light



This light should come on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

This light comes on when the engine oil pressure has fallen below the normal level while the engine is running or the oil pressure across the oil filter rises above the normal level while the engine is running.

If the warning light comes on while driving, immediately pull off to a safe place and stop the engine. Check the oil level in the engine crankcase. If the oil level is normal, restrictions are in the oil filter or within the lubricating system. Have the vehicle inspected at your dealer.

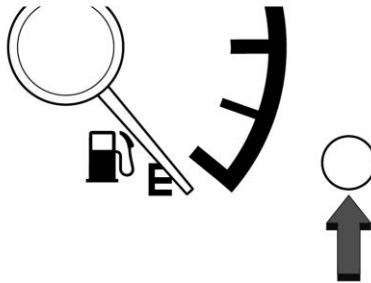
Do not run the engine with this light on. It could damage the engine. When this light comes on while driving, a warning tone also sounds.

The oil level varies while the engine is running right after it has stopped or if the vehicle is on uneven ground. As a result, the red engine oil pressure warning light may light up.

When this warning light comes on, and the oil level is correct, the lubrication system may be faulty. See your dealer for service.

See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 153.

Low Fuel Warning Light



This warning light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes too low while the engine is running.

If the low fuel warning light comes on, add fuel at the earliest possible time.

If the vehicle runs out of fuel, air bleeding procedure must be performed.

Cab Tilt Warning Light



This warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds when the engine control switch is turned to the "ON" position and the cab is not fully locked into place.

Warning

If you drive while the cab tilt warning light is illuminated, the cab may tilt forward while the vehicle is in motion. This is extremely dangerous and could result in serious injury or death. Ensure that the cab is securely locked into place before driving the vehicle.

See *Cab Tilting* ⇨ 151.

Reduced Engine Power Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

If this light comes on while the engine is running, this means the engine is overheating and in overheat protection mode. The overheat protection mode alternates firing groups of cylinders in order to prevent engine damage. In this mode, the engine loses power and performance. This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

After driving in the overheated engine protection mode, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair to avoid engine damage. The engine oil will be

severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss and change the oil. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 162.

High-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use or the headlamps are cycled between high and low beams (passing signal).

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ 59.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) Indicator Light



This light comes on when the DRL are on. If the vehicle is started during the daytime with the lighting switch off and the parking brake released, the low beam headlamps will come on at a reduced brightness. The light will go out when the lighting switch is turned on.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 58.

Cruise Control Light



This light should come on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

For vehicles with cruise control, this light comes on when cruise control is turned on.



This light should come on briefly when the engine control switch is turned to the ON position, and then should go out after the engine is started.

This light comes on when the vehicle enters the cruise control mode after the cruise control set switch is operated to set the vehicle speed.

For gasoline vehicles, the light will flash slowly when the high idle mode is active.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 141.

Vehicle Messages

Warning Buzzers

A warning buzzer may not sound if there is a problem with the buzzer system. If this occurs, the system needs to be inspected. See your dealer.

A warning buzzer sounds under the following conditions:

- Seat Belt— continuous beep. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ 50.
- Brake booster — continuous beep. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ 52.
- Engine overheat — continuous beep
- Parking brake ON — continuous beep
- Cab tilt — continuous beep. See *Cab Tilting* ⇨ 151.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

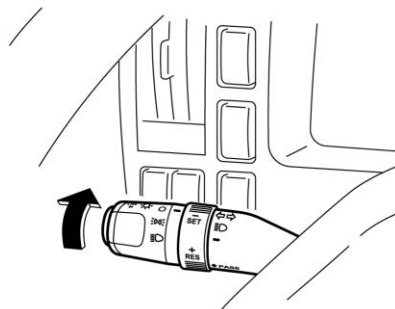
Exterior Lamp Controls	58
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer	59
Flash-to-Pass	59
Hazard Warning Flashers	59
Turn and Lane-Change Signals	60
Cornering Lamps	60

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control	61
Cargo Lamp	61
Dome Lamps	61

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



Turning the light control switch to the following positions will cause the relevant lights to illuminate.

The light control switch can be used when the engine control switch is placed in the LOCK or ACC position. Do not operate the combination lights for an extended time period with the engine off. Otherwise, the battery may go dead, making it impossible to restart the engine.

○ : Turns off all exterior lights.

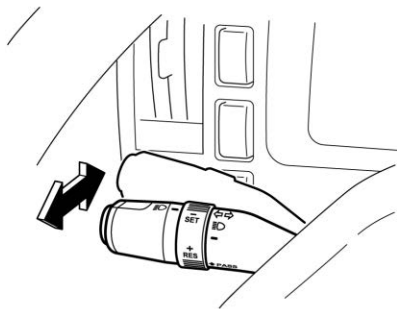
☰ : Turns on the parking lights including all exterior lights, except the headlights.

☷ : Turns on the headlights together with the parking lights, sidemarker lights, roofmarker lights, taillights, license plate light, and instrument panel lights.

When you start the engine in daytime, with the lighting switch off, and release the parking brake, the daytime running lights will come on.

See *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) Indicator Light* ⇨ 56 and *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 60.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer



With the headlights on, move the lever forward and backward to switch between the high beam and low beam.

Moving the lever forward selects high beam; moving the lever backward selects low beam.

While the headlights are on high beam, the headlights high beam indicator light on the instrument panel remains on.

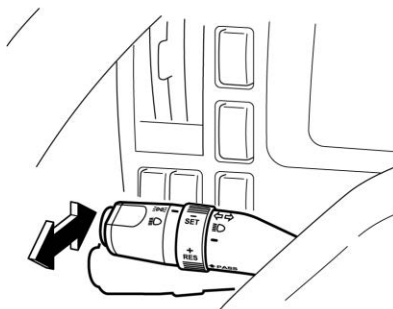


This indicator light comes on when high beam is selected or the headlights are cycled between high and low beams.

Use low beam whenever there are vehicles ahead in the same lane or oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane.

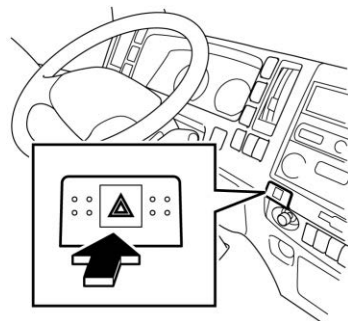
See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ 176.

Flash-to-Pass



By lightly pulling the light control switch lever and releasing it, the high beam comes on and off. At the same time, the headlights high beam indicator light on the instrument panel comes on and off. Use this function as a signal for flash-to-pass a vehicle or other purposes.

Hazard Warning Flashers



Use the hazard warning light flasher to warn other drivers any time your vehicle becomes a traffic hazard, day or night. With the engine control switch in any position or the key removed, when this switch is pressed, all of the turn signal lights and the turn

signal indicator lights flash to signal an emergency. To turn off the hazard lights, press the switch again.

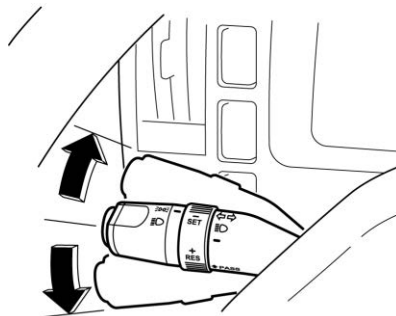
Do not leave the hazard warning light flasher operating for an extended time period with the engine off. Otherwise, the battery may go dead, making it impossible to restart the engine.



Both indicator lights flash when the hazard warning flasher switch is operated irrespective of the position of the engine control switch.

The individual turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is turned on.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



When turning left or right, move the lever up or down to flash the turn signal light.

When the turn is completed, the signal will cancel and the lever will return to horizontal.

If the steering wheel is only turned a small amount, turn off the signal manually. Lightly press and hold the lever up or down when overtaking or changing lanes. The turn signal light continues flashing as long as the lever is held up or down. The lever moves back to neutral as soon as it is released.

A green light on the instrument panel is designed to flash to tell you that the front and rear turn signal lights are working. If the light stays on, but does not flash, check for a burned-out turn signal bulb. If the green light does not come on when you move the lever, check the fuse and indicator bulb.



Either of these indicator lights flashes when the turn signal switch is operated with the engine control switch in the ON position.

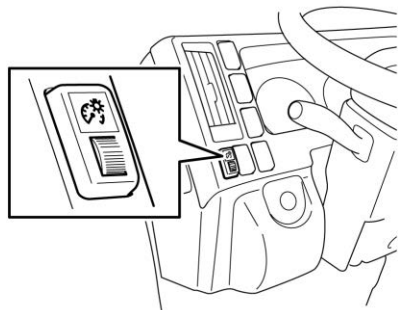
Cornering Lamps

The cornering light illuminates the area to which the vehicle is turning. With the headlights or marker lights on, the cornering lights come on in coordination with the turn signal lights.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 58 and *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ 176.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The control will change the light level of the instrument panel.

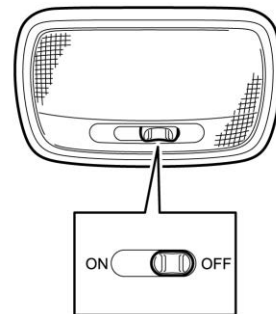
Cargo Lamp



When this switch is pressed, the rear body interior light comes on and the indicator light on the switch comes on.

Dome Lamps

Front Light

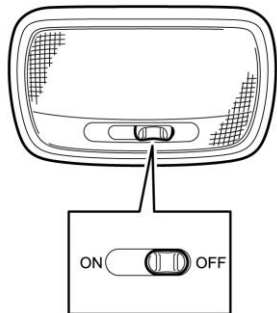


The dome light operates regardless of the engine control switch position. The switch has three positions.

ON : The light stays on regardless of the doors being open or closed.

OFF : The light stays off regardless of the doors being open or closed.

Between ON and OFF, the light comes on when the driver's door is opened.

Rear Light (Crew Cab Model Only)

The dome light operates regardless of the engine control switch position. The switch has three positions.

ON : The light stays on regardless of the doors being open or closed.

OFF : The light stays off regardless of the doors being open or closed.

Between ON and OFF, the light comes on when the driver's door is opened.

Infotainment System

Radio

AM-FM Radio	63
Radio Reception	66
Fixed Mast Antenna	67

Audio Players

CD Player	67
USB Port	74
Auxiliary Devices	81
Bluetooth Audio	82

Phone

Bluetooth	84
-----------------	----

Trademarks and License Agreements

Trademarks and License Agreements ...	91
---------------------------------------	----

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Control Panel

Warning

Adjust the radio or CD player only while the vehicle is stationary. Adjusting them while the vehicle is moving could cause a crash. You and others could be seriously injured.

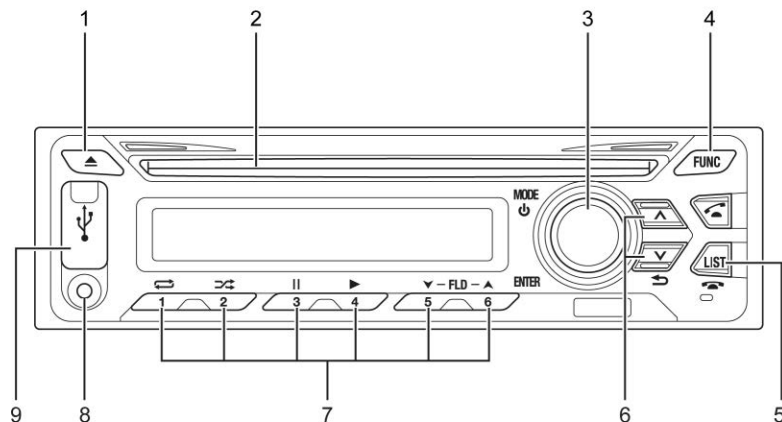
Adjust the volume so that sound outside of the vehicle can be heard. If outside sound cannot be heard, crashes may be harder to avoid.

Do not install a radio equipment antenna near the vehicle's radio antenna. This could cause unwanted noise on the radio or while playing a CD.

The radio or CD/USB player can be used when the ignition is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY. Continued use while engine is stopped may cause the battery to discharge.

Take care not to spill liquids, etc. on the radio or CD player. It may cause damage to the player.

Do not disassemble or apply oil to radio or CD player.



- (1) Eject
- (2) CD slot
- (3) MODE/⏻ /ENTER
- (4) FUNC
- (5) LIST
- (6) Tune/Track or Back
- (7) Presets
- (8) Auxiliary Jack
- (9) USB

Turning the Power On or Off

Press MODE/⏻ /ENTER to turn the power on. Press and hold it for one second or more to turn the power off.

If MODE/⏻ /ENTER is pressed while listening to music in audio mode, the power is turned off. When MODE/⏻ /ENTER is pressed again, the audio system returns to the mode it was in just before it was turned off.

Switching the Audio Modes

1. Press MODE/⏻ /ENTER.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select the audio mode and press ENTER. The audio mode changes in the following order:
FM1 ↔ FM2 ↔ FM3 ↔ DISC*1 *2 ↔ USB/iPOD(iPod)*3 ↔ BT- AUDIO ↔ AUX*4 ↔ AM1 ↔ AM2 ↔ FM1.

*1 This mode is skipped when a disc is not inserted.

*2 The content to be displayed varies depending on the data stored in the disc. (CD/MP3/WMA)

*3 These modes are skipped when the USB/iPod is not connected. "USB" is not displayed while an iPod is connected. "IPOD" is not displayed when "USB" is connected.

*4 This mode is skipped when an auxiliary player is not connected.

Adjusting the Volume

Turn the MODE/⏻ /ENTER knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume.

Turning the power on or off with the volume set to maximum will damage the equipment and your hearing. Set the volume to a moderate level.

The MODE/⏻ /ENTER knob keeps on turning until you stop. However, the volume itself is limited, and even if you keep on turning the MODE/⏻ /ENTER knob clockwise or counterclockwise, the volume is kept to a certain degree.

When the gear lever is moved to the reverse (R) position, the system will automatically mute the sound.

Function Setting Mode

Adjustment of bass, treble, fader, and balance, and setting of clock display and time can be performed.

Adjusting Bass

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select SOUND, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select BASS, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the level, and then press ENTER.

Adjusting Treble

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select SOUND, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select TREBLE, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the level, and then press ENTER.

Adjusting Fader

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select SOUND, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select FADER, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the front or rear speakers, and then press ENTER.

Adjustment of rear speaker volume is not possible if there are no rear speakers installed.

Adjusting Balance

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select SOUND, and then press ENTER.

3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select BALANCE, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the right or left speakers, and then press ENTER.

Clock Display

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select CLOCK, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to select OFF or ON, and then press ENTER.

Time is not reset when clock mode is turned off.

Setting the Time

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select CLOCK, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER clockwise or counterclockwise to select SET, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to set the clock time (hour), and then press ENTER. Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to move one hour forward or one hour backward.

5. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to set the clock time (minute), and then press ENTER. Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to move one minute forward or one minute backward.

To return to the clock time (hour) setting mode, press ⏮ while setting the clock time (minute).

Tuner Mode Operation

Turning on the Radio

1. Press MODE/⏮ /ENTER.
2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select "FM1", "FM2", "FM3", "AM1" or "AM2", and then press the "ENTER" button.

Follow one of the procedures below to tune.

Tuning

Manual tuning:

1. Press Tune/Track ▲ or ▼ for less than one second.
2. Press Tune/Track ▲ or ▼ for less than one second again to select the station of your choice.

Automatic tuning:

1. Press Tune/Track ▲ or ▼ for less than two seconds but more than one second. The radio starts searching for stations, and stops when it finds a station.
2. Press and hold Tune/Track ▲ or ▼ for more than two seconds. The radio keeps searching for stations within its available frequency band. To cancel, press the button again.

When Tune/Track ▲ is pressed, the radio is tuned to the higher frequency range (step up), and to the lower frequency range (step down) when pressing Tune/Track ▼.

In both cases, if the radio cannot find stations, it continues searching.

Storing the Stations (PRESET)

Favorite stations can be tuned by one touch operation if they are stored in the Preset buttons.

A maximum of 30 stations can be memorized and stored. 12 in AM (six each for AM1 and AM2.), and 18 in FM (six each for FM1, FM2 and FM3.)

1. Select the radio mode to be stored from FM1, FM2, FM3, AM1 or AM2.

2. Tune in the station of your choice.
3. Press and hold down the Preset buttons you want to store in, for more than two seconds. When the station is stored, the Preset button number and station frequency appear on the display window.

Radio Reception

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio. It is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle. For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals.

And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio.

FM Transmissions

Fading and drifting stations - Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 mi). Once outside this range, you may

notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path - FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering - These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping - If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM Transmissions

Fading - AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere, especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

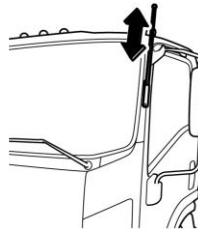
Station interference - When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static - AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightning, or electrical motors. This results in static.

Certification

For Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information for this device, see *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ 253.

Fixed Mast Antenna



Pull the antenna out to its full length when using it.

To prevent breaking the antenna, shorten it when passing through areas with low clearance or through a car wash.

Audio Players

CD Player

CD Operations

Playing a Disc (When There is No CD Inserted)

Insert a disc into the disc slot with the label side (printed side) facing up. The power will switch on and playback will start automatically.

Playing a Disc (When There is a CD Inserted)

1. Press **MODE/⏏** /ENTER.
2. Turn **MODE/⏏** /ENTER to select **DISC**, and then press **ENTER**.

Turning off the Player

Press **POWER** for one second or more. To resume playback, press **POWER** again.

Ejecting the Disc

Press **EJECT** to stop playback and eject the disc.

If a disc could not be ejected, contact nearest dealer for service.

Track (File) Selection

Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ to select the track (file) of your choice.

- Press $\wedge$ to advance to the next track (file).
- Press $\vee$ to return to the beginning of the track (file) being played. To return to the previous track (file), press again.

Selecting the Folder

For CD (MP3/WMA):

Press 5 or 6 to select the MP3/WMA folder.

- Press $\blacktriangle$ to advance to the next folder.
- Press $\blacktriangledown$ to return to the previous folder.

Fast Forwarding/Fast Reversing

Press and hold $\wedge$ or $\vee$ to fast forward or fast reverse the track (file).

- Press $\wedge$ for fast forward.
- Press $\vee$ for fast reverse. To stop fast forward or fast reverse, release.

Repeat Playback

For CD:

Press 1. $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 1 again.

For CD (MP3/WMA):

- Press 1 to repeat the same file being played. $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.
To cancel, press 1 twice. $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.
- Press 1 twice to repeat the same folder being played. After the player has played the last file, it starts playing the first file of the same folder. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.
To cancel, press 1 again. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

Random Playback

For CD:

Press 2. $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 2 again.

For CD (MP3/WMA):

- Press 2 to play all files in the MP3/WMA disc in random order. $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.
To cancel, press 2 twice. $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

- Press 2 twice to play the files from the folder being played in the MP3/WMA disc in random order. After the player has played the last file, it starts playing the first file of the same folder. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 2 twice. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

Selecting a Music File from the Category List

For CD (MP3/WMA):

1. Press LIST for less than one second. LIST is displayed.
To cancel the category selection mode, press LIST again or press BACK.
2. Turn MODE/ $\swarrow$ /ENTER to select the category of your choice, and then press ENTER. The category changes in the following order:
PLAYING $\leftrightarrow$ FOLDER $\leftrightarrow$ FILE $\leftrightarrow$ PLAYING...
3. Turn MODE/ $\swarrow$ /ENTER to select the folder or file of your choice from the list, and then press ENTER.
When a file is selected, the player starts playing the file. When FOLDER is selected, select the file in the folder to start playback.

To return to the list selection or category selection mode, press BACK for less than one second.

To cancel the category selection mode, press and hold down BACK for more than one second.

Go Back to the First Position (Home Jump)

You can go back to the first file of the first folder on the MP3/WMA disc being played from any position of it. This function is called Home Jump.

For example: If Home Jump is used when playing File 5 in Folder 4, it goes back to File 1 in Folder 1 and starts playing.

Press and hold down 5 for more than one second.

Display Text Information

1. Press and hold down LIST for more than one second.
2. Turn the MODE/⏮/ENTER switch to select the display item of your choice, and then press ENTER. The display item changes in the following order.
 - For CD:

TR NO/TIME (Track number/Playback time) ↔ ALBUM (Album title) ↔ TRACK (Track title) ↔ ARTIST (Artist name) ↔ TR NO/TIME...

- For CD (MP3/WMA):
FL/TR NO (Folder number/File number) ↔ TIME (Playback time) ↔ FOLDER (Folder name) ↔ FILE (File name) ↔ ALBUM (Album title)* ↔ TRACK (Track title) ↔ ARTIST (Artist name) ↔ FL/TR NO...
* It is not displayed during the WMA file playback.

If the text information is too long to fit into the display window, press and hold down the FUNC for more than one second to switch to the next page.

Texts recorded with characters other than alphanumeric characters and symbols will appear as "*" (asterisks).

If there is no text information stored in a music file, NO TITLE is displayed.

If Error Appears in the Display

The following messages are displayed (blink) according to the status.

- LOAD: This message is displayed right after inserting a disc into the main unit or while reading TOC
 - READING: This message is displayed when reading the file format of the disc in the MP3/WMA mode.
 - CD CHECK: This message is displayed when the disc is stained or upside-down. This message is displayed when a disc reading error or a media-dependent error occurs, including when a blank disc is inserted. Check the disc in the player.
 - DECK ERROR: This message is displayed when the player cannot operate for some reason. Eject the disc from the audio system.
 - NO SUPPORT: This message is displayed when the disc is in one of the following conditions:
 - Not in ISO9660 Level 1, 2 format
 - Not containing MP3/WMA data (including MP3/WMA extension files)
 - Containing only SKIP FILES
- If a disc cannot be ejected, please contact nearest dealer for service.

Using the Compact Disc System

Disc

When it is cold or when it is raining, the car windows will fog up and cause condensation (water drops) to form in the vehicle compartment. When this happens, the audio may skip, and playback will stop. Ventilate the vehicle compartment and dehumidify before resuming use.

The audio may skip due to violent vibrations when the car is traveling across harsh roads.

Never insert foreign objects into the disc insertion slot.

Do not insert a wet disc into the player.

This player uses an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the player. Be sure to operate the player correctly.

Playback may not be possible due to recording conditions or disc characteristics, scratches, dirt, or deterioration.

Usable Discs

Music CDs with the following marks can be used. CD-R and CD-RW discs recorded according to the CD-DA format can also be played.

- CD-R (CD-Recordable), CD-RW (CD-ReWritable) may not be able to play back due to the recording condition, characteristics of the disc, damage, dirt or deterioration due to long exposure to the environment of the vehicle compartment. CD-R, CD-RW that are not finalized and CD-R and CD-RW that are saved in the UDF format cannot be played (excluding MP3/WMA).
- CD-TEXT function is only compatible with commercial CD compatible with CD-TEXT. Characters may not display accurately in CD-R and CD-RW.
- CD, C-thru Disc with transparent or translucent recorded parts may not be inserted and ejected accurately. Please do not use them.
- SACD (Super Audio CD) can only be played in the CD level of a hybrid disc.
- CCCD (Copy Control CD) may not play as it does not meet the standard CD requirements.
- CD-EXTRA can be played as a music CD. The sound of a data track of a Mixed Mode CD cannot be played. Only music tracks can be played. A Mixed Mode CD mixed with DTS also cannot be played

accurately. This device accepts 8 cm (3 in) CDs. Plug in the device directly without using an adapter, etc. to avoid damage.

When Removing a Disc

Do not leave discs inside the player or partially inserted for a long time. This may scratch the discs and make them unusable.

Remove the disc horizontally from the main device. Do not pull it violently towards the top.

Also do not pull it down hard while removing. The disc may become damaged and the audio may skip.

Do not insert objects other than discs into the disc slot or insert more than one disc at a time.

Handling a Disc

Avoid exposing the disc to direct sunlight and always keep it in a case. Otherwise, the disc will bend and become unusable.

Do not stick any paper tape to the recording side or the label side as it may lead the disc to malfunction.

Do not use a disc with cracks or if it is severely bent as it may lead to damage.

Hold the disc without touching the recording side as this may make the disc dirty and lead to the audio skipping.

Using benzene, record disc cleaner, or anti-static fluids may damage the disc. Using a dirty disc will damage the disc and lead to audio skipping. When the disc is dirty, use a commercial disc cleaner to gently clean it from the inside to the outside. Do not use lens cleaner.

Do not use the types of disc described below because such discs may cause a breakdown.

- Adapters or discs with special properties, such as Dual Discs and printable discs.
- Discs with transparent or semitransparent sections on the recording side.
- Discs with copy protection.

New Disc

Some new discs may have burrs found in the center hole or at the edges. Remove these burrs with a ballpoint pen, etc. before using the disc.

If burrs are not removed, the disc may not be read accurately and cause improper operation.

Rental Discs

Do not use any disc that has cellophane tape or any rental disc that has glue from the label exposed or if some of the removed label still attached to it. Using the disc like this may cause the disc to not eject properly and damage the disc.

Discs with Special Shapes

Heart-shaped or octagon-shaped discs cannot be played. Do not use them as they may cause damage.

Disc Accessories

Do not use CD labels or commercially available accessories (such as stabilizers, protective seals, etc.) that are said to improve sound quality or protect the discs. They may change the thickness of the disc and external specifications and lead to damage.

Do not use commercially available accessories (such as CD rings, protectors) that are said to improve sound quality or are effective against vibrations. They may come off inside the device, causing the disc to become unplayable or unretrievable and lead to malfunction.

MP3/WMA Files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard format for sound compression technology.

By using MP3, a file can be compressed to one-tenth the size of the original.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft sound compression format. It can compress sounds to a smaller size than the MP3.

This player has limitations on MP3/WMA file standards and recorded media and formats that can be used.

Playable MP3 File Standards

Supported standards:

- MPEG-1 Audio Layer III
- MPEG-2 Audio Layer III

Supported sampling frequencies:

- MPEG-1: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- MPEG-2: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)

Supported bit rate:

- MPEG-1: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)

- MPEG-2: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160 (kbps)
 - Variable bit rate (VBR) is supported.
 - Does not support free format.
 - Digital Rights Management (DRM) is not supported.

Supported channel modes:

- Stereo
- Joint Stereo
- Dual Channel
- Monaural

Playable WMA File Standards

Supported standards:

- WMA Ver. 7
- WMA Ver. 8
- WMA Ver. 9

Supported sampling frequencies:

- 32
- 44.1
- 48 (kHz)

Supported bit rates:

- Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
- Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2): CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
 - Only compatible with 2-channel playback
- Variable bit rate (VBR) is supported.
- Lossless compression is not supported.

ID3 Tag/WMA Tag

MP3/WMA files have an ID3 Tag/WMA Tag that allows the input of information so that data such as song title and artist can be saved.

This player supports ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3 and WMA tags.

Media

Media such as CD-R and CD-RW discs are capable of playing MP3/WMA files. Compared to the CD-ROM media commonly used for music discs, CD-R and CD-RW discs are easily damaged in high temperature/high humidity environments and part of the

CD-R and CD-RW may become incapable of playback. Fingerprints or scratches on the disc may prevent playback or cause skipping during playback. Sections of a CD-R or CD-RW may deteriorate if it is left inside a vehicle for long periods of time. It is also recommended that CD-R and CD-RW discs be kept in a light-resistant case because the discs are vulnerable to ultra-violet light.

Format of Discs

The format of discs to be used must be ISO 9660 Level 1 or Level 2. Control items for this standard are as follows:

- Maximum directory layers: 8 layers
- Maximum characters for folder names/file names: 48 (including “_” and 3 letter file extension)
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root folder)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

A root directory is counted as one folder.

File Names

Only files with the MP3/WMA file extension mp3, .wma can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played. Be sure to save MP3 files with the mp3 file extension. Be sure to use the .wma file extension when saving WMA files. The MP letters of the file extension will be recognized whether entered as uppercase letters or lowercase letters.

If the .mp3 or .wma file extension is attached to a file other than an MP3/WMA file, that file will be mistakenly recognized by the deck as an MP3/WMA file and played, resulting in loud noise output that can damage the speakers. Be sure to avoid attaching the mp3 or .wma file extension to files that are not MP3/WMA files.

Multi-Sessions

Does not support multi-session. When the disc used is a multi-session disc, only the first session will be played.

Playing MP3/WMA

When a disc with recorded MP3/WMA files is inserted, the player first checks all the files on the disc. No sound is emitted while the player is checking the files on the disc. It is recommended that the disc should be recorded without files other than MP3/WMA files and without unnecessary folders in order to speed up the checking of disc files by the player.

MP3/WMA Playing Time Display

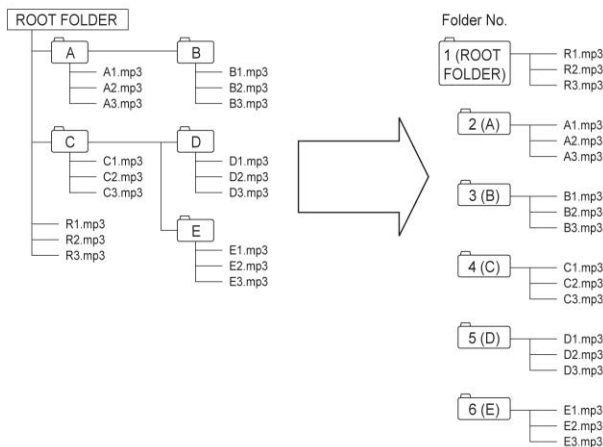
It is possible that playing time will not be correct, depending on the writing condition of the MP3/WMA file or when VBR Fast Up/Down is operated.

Display Order of MP3/WMA File/Folder Names

Names of MP3/WMA folders and files within the same level are displayed in the following order.

1. MP3/WMA folders displayed first, by ascending order of numbers, letters. The files stored just below the root of the disc will be stored in the ROOT FOLDER.
2. Files displayed next, by ascending order of numbers, letters. It is assumed here that a disc has already been loaded into the unit.

This unit reconfigures the folders created by a user as shown below.



The following operations are based on the sample MP3/WMA file structure given above.

When a disc is inserted, the CD player screen will be displayed for about a few seconds while the unit checks whether the CD is an audio CD or whether it contains MP3/WMA data.

Normally, tracks in ROOT FOLDER will be played in order from the first file.

USB Port

USB Operation

Playing Music Files in the USB Memory (When the USB Memory is not Connected)

When the USB Memory is connected to the USB terminal users can listen to music in the USB Memory.

1. Connect the USB Memory to the USB terminal.
2. Press MODE/⏏ /ENTER.

3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select USB, and then press ENTER.

The music file starts playing.

Playing Music Files in the USB Memory (When the USB Memory is Connected)

1. Press MODE/⏏ /ENTER.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select USB, and then press ENTER.

The music file starts playing.

Do not connect, adjust or remove the USB Memory while driving.

Do not remove the USB Memory or turn the ignition off or to ACC/ACCESSORY when the USB Memory is being accessed (playback). This may damage the data. We recommend making a backup of your data in case you accidentally delete it.

Depending on the USB Memory used (non-brand products, USB Memories which have been damaged due to external factors), there may be cases where connection is not possible, or where the operation is unstable.

When the USB mode is switched to other modes and then switched back again, the main unit returns to the music file played last.

File Selection

Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ to select the music file of your choice.

- Press $\wedge$ to advance to the next file.
- Press $\vee$ to return to the beginning of the file being played. Press again to return to the previous file.

Selecting the Folder

Press 5 or 6 to select the MP3/WMA folder.

- Press $\blacktriangle$ to advance to the next folder.
- Press $\blacktriangledown$ to return to the previous folder.

Fast Forwarding/Fast Reversing

Press and hold $\wedge$ or $\vee$ to fast forward or fast reverse the music file.

- Press $\wedge$ to fast forward.
- Press $\vee$ to fast reverse.

Release to stop.

Repeat Playback

Press 1 to repeat the same file being played.
 $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 1 twice. $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

Press 1 twice to repeat the same folder being played. After the player has played the last file, it starts playing the first file of the same folder.

FLD $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed. To cancel, press the button again. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

Random Playback

- Press 2 to play all files in the USB Memory in random order. $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed. To cancel, press the button twice. $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.
- Press 2 twice to play the files from the folder being played in the USB Memory in random order.

After the player has played the last file, it starts playing the first file of the same folder.

FLD $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 2 again. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ disappears.

Selecting a Music File from the Category List

1. Press LIST for less than one second. LIST is displayed.

To cancel the category selection mode, press LIST again or press Back.

2. Turn MODE/ $\odot$ /ENTER to select the category of your choice, and then press ENTER. The category changes in the following order:

PLAYING $\leftrightarrow$ FOLDER $\leftrightarrow$ FILE $\leftrightarrow$ PLAYING...

3. Turn MODE/ $\odot$ /ENTER to select the folder or file of your choice from the list, and then press ENTER.

When a file is selected, the player starts playing the file.

When FOLDER is selected, select a file in the folder to start playback. To return to the list selection or category selection mode, press BACK for less than one second.

To cancel the category selection mode, press and hold down Back for more than one second.

Go Back to the First Position (Home Jump)

You can go back to the first file of the first folder on the USB Memory being played from any position of it. This function is called Home Jump.

For example: If Home Jump is used when playing File 5 in Folder 4, it goes back to File 1 in Folder 1 and starts playing.

Display Text Information

1. Press and hold down LIST for more than one second.
2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select the display item of your choice, and then press ENTER.

The display item changes in the following order.

FL/TR NO (Folder number/File number)
 ↔ TIME (Playback time) ↔ FOLDER
 (Folder name) ↔ FILE (File name) ↔
 ALBUM (Album title)* ↔ TRACK (Track
 title) ↔ ARTIST (Artist name) ↔ FL/
 TR NO...

* It is not displayed during the WMA file playback.

If the text information is too long to fit into the display window, press and hold down FUNC for more than one second to switch to the next page.

Texts recorded with characters other than alphanumeric characters and symbols will appear as "*" (asterisks).

If there is no text information stored in a music file, NO TITLE is displayed.

If an Error Appears in the Display

The following messages are displayed (blink) according to the status.

READING: This message is displayed when reading the file format of the USB devices.

USB ERROR 1: This message is displayed when the player cannot operate for some reason. Disconnect the USB device from the audio system.

USB ERROR 2: This message is displayed when the connected USB device is disabled. Connect another USB device.

USB ERROR 3: This message is displayed when the USB hub is connected. Remove the USB hub from the audio system.

NO MUSIC: This message is displayed when a blank USB device or the USB device that does not contain files with playback extensions is connected.

READ ERROR: This message is displayed if a problem is detected in the USB device. Disconnect the USB device, and check the USB device itself.

NO SUPPORT: This message is displayed when the USB device contains no MP3/WMA data (including MP3/WMA extension files) or contains only SKIP FILES.

iPod Operation

When an iPod is connected to the USB terminal using an iPod connection cable, users can operate the iPod from the main unit and listen to music on the iPod.

See the instruction manual for the iPod Connection Cable on how to connect and set the connection cable.

Playing Music Files in the iPod (When the iPod is not Connected)

1. Use an iPod connection cable, and connect the iPod to the USB terminal.
2. Press MODE/⏮ /ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select IPOD, and then press ENTER.

READING is displayed, and it takes a few seconds to recognize the music files in the iPod. When the music files in the iPod are recognized, iPod playback begins. It will start the playback with the music file that was playing on the iPod before it was connected to the main unit. If the main unit cannot detect that file, it will start playing from the first music file.

Playing Music Files in the iPod (When the iPod is Connected)

1. Press MODE/ /ENTER.
2. Turn MODE/ /ENTER to select IPOD, and then press ENTER. The music file starts playing.

Warning

- Either place the iPod and iPod connection cable somewhere where they do not interfere with driving or temporarily secure them at a location where they are not in the way. They could impede driving and cause a crash.
- Make sure not to touch the terminals of the iPod connection cable.
- Do not connect, adjust or remove the iPod while driving.

Pausing the Music

Press 3 to pause the music. To resume, press 4.

File Selection

Press  or  to select the music file of your choice.

- Press  to advance to the next file.
- Press  to return to the previous file.
Press again to return to the previous file.

Fast Forwarding/Fast Reversing

Press and hold  or  to fast forward or fast reverse the music file.

- Press  to fast forward.
- Press  to fast reverse.

Release to stop.

Repeat Playback

Press 1 to repeat the same file being played.
 is displayed.

To cancel, press twice.  disappears.

When the iPod is removed from the main unit under the Repeat setting, the iPod switches to the repeat playback mode.

Random Playback (SHUFFLE)

Press 2.

The mode changes as follows each time you press 2:

OFF → Album Shuffle → Track Shuffle
→ OFF

- Album Shuffle:  is displayed and the albums will be played back in shuffle mode (tracks within an album will not be shuffled).
- Track Shuffle: FLD  is displayed and the selected list will be played back in shuffle mode.

When the iPod is removed from the main unit under the Shuffle setting, the iPod switches to the shuffle playback mode.

Selecting the Music File from the Category List

You can search for a music file you want to listen to from categories such as artists or genres.

1. In the iPod mode, press the LIST. The category is displayed.
2. Turn MODE/ /ENTER to select the category of your choice, and then press ENTER. The category changes in the following order:

PLAYING ↔ PLAYLISTS ↔ ARTISTS ↔
ALBUMS ↔ SONGS ↔ PODCASTS ↔
GENRES ↔ COMPOSERS ↔ AUDIO
BOOKS ↔ PLAYING...

The following information is displayed according to the category selected:

- **PLAYING:** displays the list of the music being played
- **PLAYLISTS:** displays the list of playlists
- **ARTISTS:** displays the artist list
- **ALBUMS:** displays the album list
- **SONGS:** displays the song list
- **PODCASTS:** displays the list of the podcast
- **GENRES:** displays the genre list
- **COMPOSERS:** displays the composer list
- **AUDIOBOOKS:** displays the audio book list

3. Turn **MODE/⏮** /**ENTER** to display the selection mode of your choice, and then press **ENTER**.

It repeats the operation until the **SONGS** selection mode is displayed.

The order for the display of the **SONGS** selection mode for each category is shown below.

When **SONGS**, **EPISODES** or **AUDIOBOOKS** (**CHAPTERS**) is selected, the music file selected is played.

Category	Order for the display of the SONGS selection mode
PLAYING	SONGS
PLAYLISTS	PLAYLISTS → SONGS
ARTISTS	ARTISTS → ALBUMS → SONGS
ALBUMS	ALBUMS → SONGS
SONGS	SONGS
PODCASTS	PODCASTS → EPISODES
GENRES	GENRES → ARTISTS → ALBUMS → SONGS
COMPOSERS	COMPOSERS → ALBUMS → SONGS
AUDIOBOOKS	AUDIO BOOKS → (CHAPTERS)

Follow the operations below to play music files:

- Select a music file in the list at the lowest hierarchy level to play.
- Press **BACK** while displaying the list at the middle hierarchy level.

Display Text Information

1. Press and hold down **LIST** for more than one second.

2. Turn **MODE/⏮** /**ENTER** to select the display item of your choice, and then press **ENTER**.

The display item changes in the following order.

TR NO/TIME (File number/Playback time)
 ↔ ALBUM (Album title) ↔ TRACK
 (Track title) ↔ ARTIST (Artist name) ↔
 TR NO/TIME...

- If the text information is too long to fit into the display window, press and hold down FUNC for more than one second to switch to the next page.
- Texts recorded with characters other than alphanumeric characters and symbols will appear as "*" (asterisks).
- If there is no text information stored in a music file, NO TITLE is displayed.

If ERROR Appears in the Display

The following messages are displayed (blink) according to the status.

Message	Description
READING	This message is displayed when reading the file format of the iPod.
READ ERROR	This message is displayed if a problem is detected in the iPod. Disconnect the iPod, and check the iPod itself.
COMM ERROR	This message is displayed when an iPod communication error occurs. Reconnect the iPod connection cable.
NO SONGS	This message is displayed when a blank iPod is connected.
NO PLAYLIST	This message is displayed when a blank PLAYLIST is selected.

USB Devices

USB Memory Standards

- Compatible file system : FAT16/32
- Audio format that is playable : MP3/WMA
- Compatibility : USB2.0 (Full speed)
- Compatible Device: USB mass storage class

This system is not compatible with external hard drive units (pocket hard disk drives). Connections using HUB, etc. are not supported.

Playable MP3 File Standards

- Supported standards:
 - MPEG-1 Audio Layer III
 - MPEG-2 Audio Layer III
- Supported sampling frequencies:
 - MPEG-1: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
 - MPEG-2: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Supported bit rate:
 - MPEG1: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
 - MPEG2: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160 (kbps)
- Variable bit rate (VBR) is supported.
- Does not support free format.
- Digital Rights Management (DRM) is not supported.
- Supported channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel, monaural

Playable WMA File Standards

- Supported standards:
- Supported sampling frequencies: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Supported bit rates: Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps) Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2): CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
 - Only compatible with 2-channel playback
- Variable bit rate (VBR) is supported.
- Lossless compression is not supported.

ID3 Tag/WMA Tag

MP3/WMA files have an ID3 Tag/WMA Tag that allows the input of information so that data such as song title and artist can be saved.

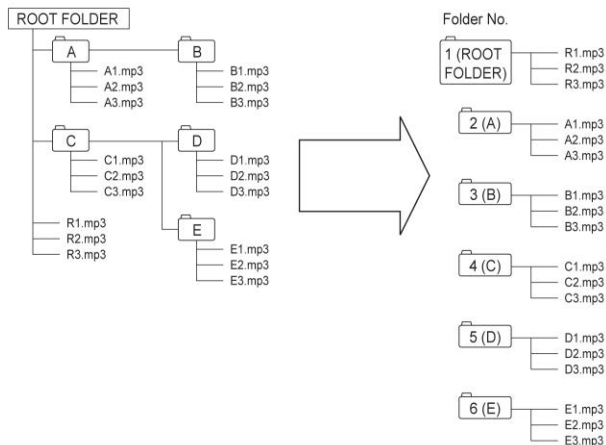
This deck supports ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3 and WMA tags.

Display Order of MP3/WMA File/Folder Names

Names of MP3/WMA folders and files within the same level are displayed in the following order.

1. MP3/WMA folders displayed first, by ascending order of numbers, letters. The files stored just below the root of the USB device will be stored in the ROOT FOLDER.
2. Files displayed next, by ascending order of numbers, letters. It is assumed here that a USB device has already been loaded into the unit.

This unit reconfigures the folders created by a user as shown below.



3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select AUX, and then press ENTER.

Connecting a mini plug cable to the Mini jack also establishes the AUX mode and enables you to use the portable audio device.

When the mini plug cable is disconnected from the main unit, the AUX mode is cancelled.

Adjusting the Volume

Turn the Volume adjust knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the volume.

- Turn clockwise: Increase the volume.
- Turn counterclockwise: Decrease the volume.

⚠ Warning

- Either place the portable audio device and mini plug cable somewhere where they do not interfere with driving or temporarily secure them at a location where they are not in the way. They could impede driving and cause a crash.
- Make sure not to touch the terminals of the mini plug cable.

(Continued)

The following operations are based on the sample MP3/WMA file structure given above.

Normally, tracks in ROOT FOLDER will be played in order from the first file.

Auxiliary Devices

AUX Operation

By connecting the 3.5 mm headphone jack of your own portable audio device to the Mini jack, you can listen to your own music through this unit.

1. Use a mini plug cable, and connect the portable audio device to the Mini jack.
2. Press MODE/⏏ /ENTER.

Warning (Continued)

- Do not connect, adjust or remove the portable audio device while driving.

The volume set by adjustment in the AUX mode is effective in the AUX mode only.

To power the portable audio device, use the battery or other power source supplied with the device.

The AUX device cannot be controlled from the main unit.

Reduce the AUX volume to prevent speaker damage.

Bluetooth Audio**Bluetooth Audio Operation**

Connecting a Bluetooth compatible audio player or mobile phone to this unit allows you to operate it from the system and listen to music.

In addition, as the connection between the unit and the portable device is wireless, users will not face problems associated with cable connections.

This unit supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system which allows users to listen to music without the need to connect the portable device with wires.

If the portable device is not Bluetooth-compatible, this function is not available.

Do not connect the portable device while driving.

Do not leave the portable device inside the vehicle. (The interior of the vehicle may become too hot under extreme hot weather.)

Do not set the portable device too close to this unit. When the device and the unit are too close to each other, sound quality may deteriorate and connection problems may arise.

Playing Music

1. Press MODE/⏏ /ENTER.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select BT-AUDIO, and then press ENTER.
The music on the Bluetooth compatible device that is connected will start.
When the registered device is not connected, NO CONNECT is displayed.

First connect the portable device to the unit before performing the following operation. See "Registering a Bluetooth Device" in *Bluetooth* ⇨ 84.

Bluetooth audio operation is subject to portable device compatibility.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Depending on the Bluetooth-compatible portable device that is connected to this unit, the music will not start and may be paused.

When the player is connected to an Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) Version 1.0 compatible portable device, STREAMING displays and the functions of your devices may be partially limited.

Stop Playback

Switch to another audio mode.

Pausing the Music

Press 3 to pause the music.

Press 4 to resume.

Track Selection

Press the $\wedge$ $\vee$ to select the track of your choice.

$\wedge$: Advance to the next track.

$\vee$: Return to the beginning of the track being played. To return to the previous track, press the $\vee$ again.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Fast Forwarding/Fast Reversing

Press and hold $\wedge$ $\vee$ to fast forward or fast reverse the track.

$\wedge$: Fast forward.

$\vee$: Fast reverse.

To stop fast forward or fast reverse, release the button.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Selecting the Album

Press 5 or 6 to select an album.

$\blacktriangle$: Advance to the next album.

$\blacktriangledown$: Return to previous album.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Repeat Playback

Press 1 to repeat the same track being played. $\rightleftarrows$ appears on the display. To cancel, press 1 twice.

Press 1 twice to repeat the same album being played.

After the player has played the last file, it starts playing the first file of the same album. FLD $\rightleftarrows$ appears on the display.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Random Playback

Press 2 to play all tracks in the Bluetooth Audio in random order.

$\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 2 twice.

Press 2 twice to playback tracks on the album being played in random order. After the player has played the last track, it starts playing the first track of the same album.

FLD $\rightleftarrows$ is displayed.

To cancel, press 2 again.

Display Text Information

1. Press and hold LIST for more than one second.
2. Turn MODE/ $\hookrightarrow$ /ENTER to select the display item of your choice, and then press enter.

The display item changes in the following order.

- TR NO/TIME: Track number/Playback time
- ALBUM: Album title
- TRACK: Track title
- ARTIST: Artist name

If the text information is too long to fit into the display window, press and hold down FUNC for more than one second to switch to the next page.

Texts recorded with characters other than alphanumeric characters and symbols will appear as "*" (asterisks).

If there is no text information stored in a music file, NO TITLE is displayed.

Displaying the Registered Portable Device

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select LIST AUDIO, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select device name, and then press ENTER.
5. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select the display item of your choice, and then press ENTER.

SELECT: Connect the registered portable device. SEARCHING is displayed.

DISCONNECT: Disconnect the registered portable device. DISCONNECT? is displayed, press ENTER.

DELETE: Delete the registered portable device. When DELETE? is displayed, press ENTER.

METHOD: Change the connection method. Select FROM VEHICLE, to connect the portable device by operating

from the unit. Select FROM AUDIO, to connect the unit from the portable device.

If ERROR Appears in the Display

The following message appears in the display window according to the status.

NO CONNECT: This message appears when the unit is not connected to the portable device.

Phone

Bluetooth

This unit supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system by which you can call without your mobile phone being connected with a cable or placed on a cable. If your mobile phone does not support Bluetooth, this unit cannot function.

Registering a Bluetooth Device

Connecting a Bluetooth device (mobile phone or Bluetooth compatible audio player) to this unit allows you to operate it from the unit and talk in handsfree mode or listen to music. When a Bluetooth connection is established,  is displayed.

Do not register the Bluetooth device while driving. Park the vehicle in a secure location before carrying out the registration.

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. When PAIRING is displayed, press ENTER.
If the Bluetooth device has already been registered in this unit, turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select PAIRING.
4. After CAR AUDIO, a 4-digit passkey is displayed, operate the Bluetooth device to enter the passkey.

See the instruction manual enclosed with your portable device on how to operate it.

5. When the registration of the Bluetooth device in this unit is completed, CONNECTED is displayed.

If FAILED is displayed, after the passkey is entered, try registering again.

Up to five Bluetooth devices can be registered on the unit. If it exceeds the limit of registrations and DEL DEVICE? is displayed, you must delete the registered Bluetooth device.

Connect to the Bluetooth Device Automatically

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/☺ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/☺ /ENTER to select A.CONNECT, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/☺ /ENTER to select ON/OFF, and then press ENTER.
CONNECT ON: Turn on the automatic connection.
CONNECT OFF: Turn off the automatic connection.

Clearing the Bluetooth Settings

You can clear the Bluetooth settings or histories stored in this unit.

Do not clear the settings while driving. Park your vehicle in a secure location and then initialize them.

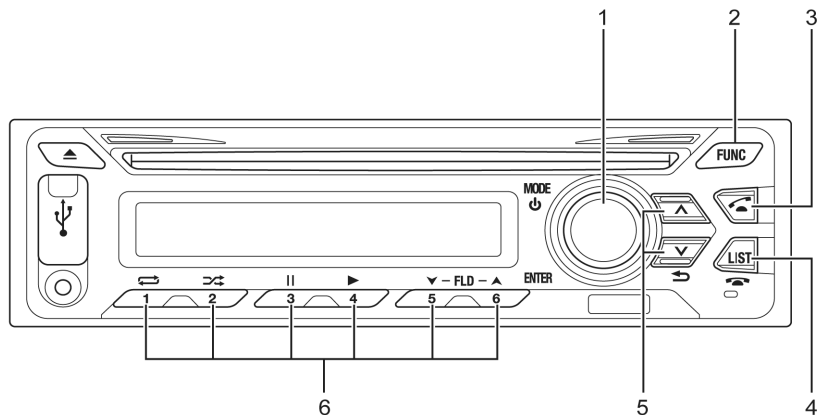
1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/☺ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/☺ /ENTER to select RESET DATA, and then press ENTER.
4. When RESET DATA? is displayed, press ENTER.
PLEASE WAIT is displayed, when reset is complete COMPLETED is displayed.

The reset Bluetooth settings or histories are unrecoverable once the RESET DATA function has been completed.

When selling your vehicle, make sure to delete all personal data in your audio system. You should delete the following Handsfree/Bluetooth Audio data from the system:

- Phonebook data
- History of outgoing/incoming/missed calls
- Speed dial data
- Handsfree setting
- Bluetooth phone data
- Portable device data
- Portable device connection setting

Operating the Handsfree System



- (1) MODE/⏻ /ENTER
- (2) FUNC
- (3) Off Hook
- (4) On Hook
- (5) Level Adjust
- (6) Speed Dial

First connect the mobile phone to the unit before performing the following operation. See "Registering a Bluetooth Device".

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may be high and damage the phone.

In the following conditions, the system may not function:

- The mobile phone is turned off.
- The current position is outside the communication area.
- The mobile phone is not connected.
- The mobile phone has a low battery.

You can register mobile phones and store phone numbers to the unit as follows:

- Up to 1,000 phone numbers can be stored.
- Up to six phone numbers can be stored in the speed dial list.

Making a Phone Call by Entering a Phone Number

Do not enter a phone number while driving. Park your vehicle in a secure location and then enter the phone number.

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select ENTER NUMBER, and then press ENTER. INPUT NUMBER is displayed.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select a phone number.

You can enter phone numbers by one digit at a time.

Numeric character (0-9) and symbols (*, #, +) are available. You can use the symbols (+) only for the first digit.

⏮: Advance to the next digit.

⏭: Delete the entered digit and return to the previous digit.

4. After entering the phone number, press Off Hook or ENTER.

CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Making a Phone Call Using Phonebook

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select PHONEBOOK, and then press ENTER.
The phonebook data is displayed.
3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select the phone number of your choice, and then press ENTER.

Select in the following order:

Initial → Name → Phone number

CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

You can also make a call by pressing the Off Hook.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Making a Phone Call Using Missed Call History

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select MISSED, and then press ENTER.

The phone number of the previous missed call appears on the display window.

3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select the phone number of your choice, and then press ENTER.

CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

You can also make a call by pressing Off Hook.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Making a Phone Call Using Incoming Call History

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select INCOMING, and then press ENTER.

The person (phone number or name) who made the previous incoming call is displayed.

3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select the person (phone number or name) of your choice, and then press ENTER.

CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

You can also make a call by pressing Off Hook.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Making a Phone Call Using Outgoing Call History

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select OUTGOING, and then press ENTER.
The person (phone number or name) you called is displayed.
3. Turn MODE/⏏ /ENTER to select the person (phone number or name) of your choice, and then press ENTER.
CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

You can also make a call by pressing the Off Hook.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Answering a Call

When your phone set receives a call, INCOMING, followed by the person (phone number or name) is displayed.

- If there is a call that has been registered, the caller's name is displayed.
- If there is a call that has not been registered, only the number is displayed.
- If there is a private call, UNAVAILABLE is displayed.
- You can refuse a call by pressing On Hook when a call is incoming.
- This unit supports the in-band ring tone (transfers the ring tone from your phone to the main unit). If the in-band ring tone is not supported your phone, the unit use the built-in ring tone.

1. Press Off Hook and use handsfree to talk.
2. When you have finished the call, press On Hook.

Registering a Speed Dial by Entering a Phone Number

Up to six phone numbers and names can be registered in the Speed Dial and you can call the person in a one-touch operation.

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/☪ /ENTER to select ENTER NUMBER, and then press ENTER. INPUT NUMBER is displayed.
3. Turn MODE/☪ /ENTER to select a phone number.

You can enter phone numbers by one digit at a time.

Numeric character (0-9) and symbols (*, #, +) are available. You can use the symbols (+) only for the first digit.

⤴: Advance to the next digit.

⤵: Delete the entered digit and return to the previous digit.

You can also select phone numbers from the phonebook.

4. After entering the phone number, press and hold down the Speed Dial of your choice for more than one second.

SAVED is displayed and the Speed Dial registration is complete.

Registering a Speed Dial Number from a History

You can select a phone number from the incoming (missed call) or outgoing call history and register it for speed dialling.

Do not register the phone number while driving. Park your vehicle in a secure location and register it.

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.
2. Turn MODE/☪ /ENTER to select the phone number history of your choice, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/☪ /ENTER to select the phone number of your choice.
4. Press and hold down the Speed Dial you want to store in, for more than one second.

SAVED is displayed and the Speed Dial registration is complete.

Making a Call Using Speed Dial

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.

2. Press the Speed Dial of your choice for less than one second.

3. Press Off Hook or ENTER.

CALLING is displayed and a call is made to the selected phone number.

When the person receives the call, you can talk in handsfree mode.

Registering a Name to Speed Dial

Do not register names to speed dial while driving. Park your vehicle in a secure location and register them.

1. Press Off Hook on the infotainment controls.

2. Press the Speed Dial of your choice for less than one second.

3. Press FUNC.

4. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select characters.

You can enter phone numbers by one digit at a time.

Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols are available. '< > * + - . / \ = _ (space)

∧: Advance to the next digit.

∨: Delete the entered digit and return to the previous digit.

5. After entering the name, press ENTER.

SAVED is displayed and the name registration to the Speed Dial is complete.

Setting the Volume

Call Volume: Turn Volume Adjust during a call.

- Turn clockwise: Increase the volume.
- Turn counterclockwise: Decrease the volume. The adjusted volume value is saved.

Ringtone Volume: Turn Volume Adjust during an incoming call.

- Turn clockwise: Increase the volume.
- Turn counterclockwise: Decrease the volume. The adjusted volume value is saved.

The volume and microphone gain setting of each mobile phone is different according to its specification.

Setting the Sensitivity of the Built-In Microphone

If your voice is too low or difficult to hear for the person you are talking to, or there is an echo or howling, you can adjust the microphone sensitivity.

Press the Level Adjust during a call.

∧: Increase the sensitivity. (The sound transmission is more effective.)

∨: Decrease the sensitivity. (The sound transmission is less effective.)

The setting can be adjusted within the range of zero to MAX (10). (Default: five).

MIC LEVEL is displayed. MIC LEVEL disappears in two seconds after the operation is completed, and the display returns to its original state.

Talking on the Mobile Phone (Private Mode)

You can switch phone calls from this unit (handsfree mode) to the mobile phone.

Press and hold down the Off Hook for more than one second during a call.

Entering Tone Numbers

You can transmit tone numbers during a call.

1. Press FUNC during a call.

2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select the tone number. You can enter phone numbers by one digit at a time.

Numeric character (0-9) and symbols (*, #, +) are available. You can use the symbols (+) only for the first digit.

3. Press $\wedge$. The selected tone numbers are transmitted. You will move on to the next step and select the tone numbers again if necessary.

Talking During Call Waiting

When the display window indicates the phone call in progress, the Call Waiting feature enables you to receive and answer a second phone call while placing the first call on hold.

Press Off Hook when the ring tone starts during a call.

- While placing the phone call in progress on hold, you will be connected to the second caller.
- Press On Hook when you wish to turn off the Call Waiting feature.
- When the Call Waiting feature is turned off, you will be connected to the first caller on hold.
- Pressing the Off Hook again enables you to switch between callers on Call Waiting.

This function is available only when your phone is compatible with the Call Waiting feature.

Displaying the Registered Mobile Phone

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select LIST PHONE, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select mobile phone name, and then press ENTER.
5. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select the display item of your choice, and then press ENTER.

SELECT: Connect the registered mobile phone. SEARCHING is displayed.

DISCONNECT: Disconnect the registered mobile phone. When DISCONNECT? is displayed, press ENTER.

DELETE: Delete the registered mobile phone. When DELETE? is displayed, press ENTER.

Adjusting the Handsfree Volume

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.

3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select HF SOUND, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select an adjustment item, and then press ENTER.
CALL VOLUME: Adjust the call volume.
RINGTONE: Adjust the ringtone volume.
5. Turn the Volume Adjust.

Turn clockwise: Increase the volume.

Turn counterclockwise: Decrease the volume. The adjusted volume value is saved.

To adjust the volume during an incoming call or during a call, see "Setting the Volume" in this section.

Setting the Phonebook Auto Transfer

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to select A.TRANSFER, and then press ENTER.
4. Turn MODE/⏻ /ENTER to switch ON/OFF, and then press ENTER.

TRANSFER ON: Turn on the phonebook transfer.

TRANSFER OFF: Turn off the phonebook transfer.

Deleting a Phonebook

1. Press FUNC.
2. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select BLUETOOTH, and then press ENTER.
3. Turn MODE/⏮ /ENTER to select DEL P.BOOK, and then press ENTER.
4. When DELETE ? is displayed, press ENTER.

Trademarks and License Agreements

FCC Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ 253.

Windows Media is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Microsoft, Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other company names and product names appearing on this manual are the trademarks and registered trademarks of their respective companies.



iPod and iTunes may be used with materials without copyright, or materials for which copying or playback are legally allowed for the purposes of private copying or playback. The infringement of copyright is prohibited by law.

Use of the Made for Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to connect specifically to the Apple products identified in the badge, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not

responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.

Please note that the use of this accessory with an Apple product may affect wireless performance.

Apple, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod touch and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by DENSO TEN is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Compatible Bluetooth Specifications:
Bluetooth Specification Ver.2.1 + EDR

Compatible Profiles: Hands Free Profile (HFP) Ver.1.5, Phone Book Access Profile (PBAP) Ver. 1.1, Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) Ver.1.2, Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) Ver.1.3

Bluetooth Handsfree/Audio operation is subject to mobile phone compatibility.

Bluetooth Handsfree performance can be influenced by mobile phone network, handset and driving condition.

The functions of the system may be partially limited depending on the model of your mobile phone.

Operation of the portable device via this unit differs depending on the specifications of the portable device.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems

Climate Control Systems 93

Air Vents

Air Vents 96

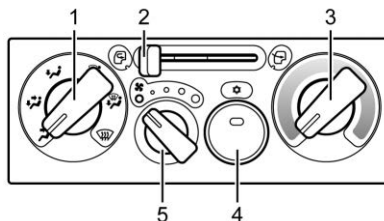
Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter 97

Service 98

Climate Control Systems

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



Climate Control System w/Air Conditioning shown, Heater Only similar

1. Outlet Selector Knob
2. Air Selector Lever
3. Temperature Control Knob
4. Air Conditioning (A/C) Switch, if equipped
5. Fan Speed Control Knob

Outlet Selector Knob : The Air Selector Knob regulates air flow from the upper, floor and defroster outlets.

 : Air flows through the upper outlets.

 : Air flows through the upper and floor outlets.

 : Air is flows through the floor outlets.

 : Air flows through the floor outlets, with some air coming from the door window and windshield outlets.

 : Air flows through the floor outlets, with some air coming from the door and windshield outlets at a greater volume than the first position.

 : Air flows through the door window and windshield outlets.

Air Selector Lever : The intake of outside air and the circulation of inside air is controlled by sliding this lever right or left.

 : Use this position to ventilate the interior of the cab. This position should be normally selected.

 : Use this position to prevent dusty or otherwise contaminated outside air from entering the cab, such as in a tunnel or in congested traffic.

Extended use of the inside air recirculation position causes the windshield and windows to fog up easily, making visibility poor. For good ventilation, switch to outside air as soon as possible.

Temperature Control Knob : Use this knob to select the preferred cab interior temperature. Turn the knob counterclockwise to lower the outlet air temperature and clockwise to raise it.

Fan Speed Control Knob : The fan speed can be adjusted to any of the four speeds available.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Switch : Press this switch to use the air conditioning system. The indicator light inside the switch will come on to show that the air conditioning system is in operation. The air conditioning system can also be used for dehumidifying while the heater is being used. To turn off the air conditioning, push this switch in again.

When the defrost mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor will be on.

Even if the A/C switch is turned on, the air conditioning system will not operate when the fan speed control knob is placed in the stop position. Make sure that the fan speed control knob is in a position other than the stop position.

Even in seasons when the air conditioning system is not used, occasionally operate the system for a few minutes with the engine running at a low speed in order to keep the system's components lubricated.

Ventilation

Outside Air Ventilation : Press the A/C switch to the off position. Turn the outlet selector knob to the preferred position. Move the air selector lever to the  position.

Set the temperature control knob to the desired position. Adjust the fan speed control knob to the preferred speed.

How to Use the Heater

Normal Heating : Set the outlet selector knob to the  or  position. Use the  position for warming your feet while defogging the windshield.

Set the air selector lever to the  position. Adjust the temperature control knob and the fan speed control knob to the desired positions.

To dehumidify the cab interior while heating, press the A/C switch to the on position.

As the heater uses the heat from the engine coolant, its heating effect is weak when the engine coolant temperature is low.

Maximum Heating : Turn the outlet selector knob to the  position, set the air selector lever to the  position, and turn the temperature control knob fully towards the high temperature direction.

Set the fan speed control knob to the maximum speed position.

Bi-Level Heating : Set the outlet selector knob to the  position. Set the air selector lever to the  position. Set the temperature control knob to the middle position.

Adjust the fan speed control knob as desired. The air from the floor outlets is warmer than the air from the upper outlets in this position.

However, when the temperature control knob is moved to either the full hot or the full cold position, the air from the floor outlets and the air from the upper outlets will be the same temperature. This position can give cool upper level air and warm floor level air when the temperature control is

adjusted in between cold and hot. This is useful in cool weather with bright sunlight conditions.

Defogging and Defrosting the Windshield

Defogging : Set the outlet selector knob to the  position. Set the air selector lever to the  position.

Turn the temperature control knob to a high-temperature position according to your preference. For defogging in the summer months, set the temperature control knob to any desired position.

Set the fan speed control knob to any speed position, except the off position. The A/C compressor automatically operates when the  position is selected. Defogging is performed very effectively with the dehumidifying effect.

Defrosting : Set the outlet selector knob to the  position. Set the air selector lever to the  position.

Turn the temperature control knob fully towards the high-temperature direction. Set the fan speed control knob to the maximum speed position.

After defrosting, be certain to return the air selector lever to the  position. Failure to do so will cause the windshield to fog up, impeding forward visibility.

Cooling

Normal/Moderate Cooling : This setting is suitable for extended periods of cooling or moderate cooling. Press the A/C switch to the on position.

Set the outlet selector knob to the  position for normal cooling or set it to the  position for moderate cooling. Adjust the temperature control knob to the desired position. Adjust the fan speed control knob as desired

Maximum Cooling : Set the outlet selector knob to the  position. Press the A/C switch to the on position. Move the air selector lever to the  position

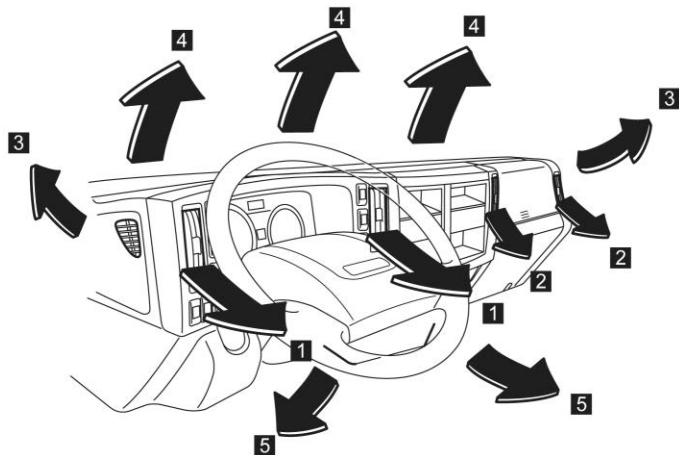
Turn the temperature control knob fully towards the low-temperature direction. Set the fan speed control knob to the maximum speed position.

After prolonged parking in direct sunlight, open the windows or doors to ventilate the interior of the cab and release the heat.

During cooling operation, mist may come out of the air outlets. This results from quick cooling of humid air, and does not indicate any problem.

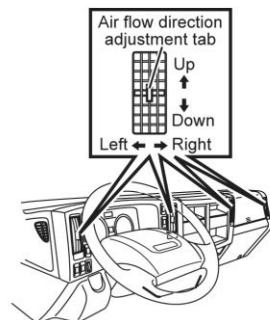
After maximum cooling, be certain to return the air selector lever to the  position. Failure to do so will cause the windshield to fog up, impeding forward visibility.

Air Vents



1. Driver Side Outlets. Airflow direction is adjustable.
2. Passenger Side Outlets. Airflow direction is adjustable.
3. Door Windows Outlet. Air is delivered towards the door windows
4. Windshield Outlets. Air is delivered towards the windshield.
5. Foot Outlets. Air is delivered towards the feet.

Air Flow Direction Control Lever

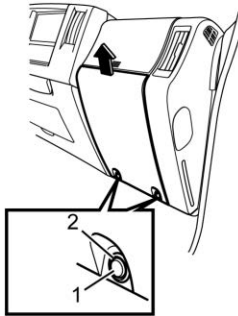


Use the tab to adjust the airflow direction from the outlet. To close the outlet, move the tab fully down.

Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Removing the Inside Air Filter



1. Remove the two clips securing the cover. Remove the clips in the order of the inner clip (1) followed by the outer clip (2).
2. Remove the cover by pushing it upwards.



3. Remove and clean the filter. Use a vacuum cleaner or the like to clean dust and dirt from its surface.

Avoid interference with electric harnesses when removing the filter.

In order to avoid filter damage, hard brushes should not be used for filter cleaning.

Installing the Inside Air Filter

Install the filter in the reverse order to removal.

Ensure that the filter is returned securely to its original position. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to rattling during travel.

The vehicle must not be used with the filter removed or incorrectly installed. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to air conditioning system damage as a result of dust, dirt and the like entering the system.

Removing the Outside Air Filter



1. Remove the filter from under the instrument panel on the passenger side. While pressing in the filter lock, on both sides, pull out the filter.
2. Use a vacuum cleaner or the like to clean dust and dirt from its surface.

In order to avoid filter damage, hard brushes should not be used for filter cleaning.

Installing the Outside Air Filter

Install the filter in the reverse order to removal.

Ensure that the filter is returned securely to its original position. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to rattling during travel.

The vehicle must not be used with the filter removed or incorrectly installed. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to air conditioning system damage as a result of dust, dirt, water, snow, and the like entering the system.

Service

The air conditioning system will not be able to cool the cab interior effectively if the refrigerant level is low. Accordingly, the refrigerant level must be topped up whenever necessary.

Please contact your dealer whenever refrigerant must be added.

Operation Tips

Operating the air conditioning while the refrigerant level is too low leads not only to poor cooling performance but also to air conditioning system damage.

This vehicle uses the new refrigerant HFC134a (R134a) in the air conditioning system. No other type of refrigerant can be used. In order to protect the environment, care must be taken to ensure that refrigerant gas is never released into open air. When refrigerant must be replaced, therefore, please contact your dealer or other service facility equipped with a gas recovery installation system.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Driver Behavior	99
Driving for Better Fuel Economy	100
Distracted Driving	100
Control of a Vehicle	100
Braking	103
Steering	108
Driving on Wet Roads	108
Hill and Mountain Roads	108
Winter Driving	109
If the Vehicle Is Stuck	111
Emergencies (Troubleshooting)	112
Emergencies (Disabled Vehicle)	119

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In	119
Pedals	120
Ignition Positions	120
Starting and Stopping the Vehicle	121
Operating Temperature	124
Engine Heater	125
High Idle System	125
Engine Checks Before Operating	126
Parking over Things That Burn	127

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust	128
Running the Vehicle While Parked	129

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission	129
Selector Lever	136

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)	137
Parking Brake	139

Cruise Control

Cruise Control	141
----------------------	-----

Driver Assistance Systems

Speed Limiter	144
---------------------	-----

Fuel

Top Tier Fuel	144
Recommended Fuel	144
Prohibited Fuels	144
Fuels in Foreign Countries	145
Fuel Additives	145
Filling the Tank	145

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment	146
-----------------------------------	-----

Driving Information

Driver Behavior

Napping in the Vehicle

Warning

Before taking a nap in the vehicle, be sure to shut off the engine and place the ignition in the LOCK position. Otherwise, any unintended contact with the accelerator pedal while you are asleep could cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.

- If you leave the engine running and unintentionally keep the accelerator pedal pressed while asleep, the engine and exhaust pipe could become abnormally hot, resulting in a fire.
- If you leave the engine running while taking a nap with the vehicle parked in a place where exhaust gases could get into the cab (for example, a place that is poorly ventilated), you could suffer carbon monoxide poisoning.
- You and others could be seriously injured.

Do Not Spill Liquids on the Instrument Panel

Caution

Do not spill liquids on the instrumental panel. Doing so may damage electrical components inside the instrument panel.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Economical Driving

How you drive, where you drive and when you drive all affect fuel economy.

Drive at a constant speed as much as possible. When accelerating, increase your speed gently and slowly, and up-shift early.

Maintain a constant cruising speed, as traffic allows, and avoid sudden stops.

Frequent short trips, excessive idling, and use of the air conditioner in cool weather when "Vent" would provide adequate comfort, can all lead to decreased fuel economy.

Warming up the engine for longer than necessary, driving with the vehicle overloaded, and revving the engine are a waste of fuel.

The careful attention you give your vehicle, as far as maintenance is concerned, will also help fuel economy.

Protection of Engine against Overcooling

Overcooling of the engine not only accelerates wear of the vital engine parts but also hurts fuel economy.

Distracted Driving

Do Not Use a Mobile Phone While Driving

Warning

Drivers should never use mobile telephones or car phones in any mode other than Hands Free while driving. Doing so is dangerous. Using a mobile telephone while driving could result in an accident because you would not be paying full attention to your surroundings. If you are driving and you wish to use a mobile telephone, first stop the vehicle in a safe place.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Control of a Vehicle

Warnings for Driving

Warning

Concentrate on driving safely, obeying all legally designated speed limits, road signs and traffic signals.

If you notice any abnormal noise, abnormal smell or abnormal vibration from any part of the vehicle, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and perform checks.

If a warning light comes on or a buzzer sounds while you are driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and perform checks.

Slow down sufficiently when approaching a curve. Applying the brakes or sharply turning the steering wheel while turning the curve could cause the cargo to shift, the tires to slip and the vehicle to tip onto its side.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Avoid scraping the tire sidewalls against curbstones or driving over dips and protrusions in the road surface. You could damage the tires, resulting in a blowout or flat tire.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Pulling Away After Stopping and Parking

Before pulling away, check that there are no children or obstructions around the vehicle and confirm that it is safe to pull away.

If you cannot see the area behind your vehicle well enough to confirm it is safe to back up, get out of the vehicle and check behind it.

Make it a habit to look around and confirm that it is safe to pull away after a temporary stop (at traffic lights, for example).

If the Windshield Fogs Up

Use the heater to blow hot air on the windshield or dehumidify the cabin using the air conditioner and place the outlet selector knob in the  or  position.

Place the air selector lever in the outside air position.

Nighttime Visibility

If there is an old film on the windshield, the lights of oncoming traffic will be reflected in many directions, making it hard for you to see ahead. Use glass cleaner to clean the glass and the wiper blades.

Worn wiper blades cannot wipe the windshield clean and thus cannot maintain visibility. When the wiper blades become worn, replace them with new ones.

Do Not Attach Accessories to the Windshield or Windows** Warning**

Do not attach ornaments, films or other accessories to the windshield or windows. They would impair visibility. Also, any plastic suction cups used to attach accessories could cause a fire or other accident by acting as lenses.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Never Stop the Engine While Driving** Warning**

Do not move the engine control switch away from the "ON" position while the vehicle is being driven.

If the engine stops while the vehicle is moving, the brake booster does not work, and the brakes would not work properly. The engine could also be damaged.

Stopping the engine while driving would be extremely dangerous because the power steering would stop working, making the steering wheel extremely hard to turn.

Stopping the engine while driving would be extremely dangerous because the warning lights, indicator lights and other electrical circuitry would completely stop working.

Placing the engine control switch in the "LOCK" position while driving would be extremely dangerous because the key

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

could come out, causing the steering wheel to lock so that you could not turn it.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Avoid Unnecessary Idling of the Engine

If the engine idles too long, the engine coolant temperature will fall below the operating range. Low engine operating temperature causes several conditions that are harmful to engine operation and life. Incomplete combustion of fuel in an engine that is not fully warmed-up causes crankcase dilution and forms lacquer and gummy deposits on valves, pistons, and rings. It also causes rapid accumulation of sludge within the engine.

Driving at Night

Nighttime driving is more dangerous than daytime driving because the field of view is narrower. Keep your speed down, and maintain an ample headway distance.

Metallic Plinking Sound from the Muffler

Immediately after stopping the engine, you may hear a metallic plinking sound from the muffler. This sound occurs as the muffler cools down and contracts. It does not indicate an abnormality or breakdown.

When the Silencer and Exhaust Pipe are Hot **Warning**

When the engine is running and immediately after vehicle operation, the DPF, silencer, and exhaust pipe are extremely hot. Be careful not to inadvertently touch them when working near them (for example, tilting the cab or operating an attachment). You and others could be seriously injured.

Recommendations for Driving in Hot Regions

The engine is more likely to overheat in an environment where the ambient temperature is high. To prevent the engine from overheating, pay attention to the following points:

- If the engine does not contain the appropriate concentration of engine coolant, overheating is likely to occur. Refer to *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 158.
- Do not put well water, river water or other hard water in the engine cooling system. It would hasten the formation of rust and scale.
- If foreign matter (insects, mud, etc.) gets stuck in the radiator's air passages, the cooling system's performance will deteriorate. Check the air passages for clogging, and remove any foreign matter using water under low pressure. Refer to *Exterior Care* ⇨ 210.

When Turning, the Rear Wheels will Follow Tighter Curves than the Front Wheels

Use the mirrors to confirm safety.

Sidewinds

If the vehicle catches a sidewind and drifts sideways, firmly grip the steering wheel, decelerate to a speed that allows you to stay completely in control, and make a directional correction. The vehicle may catch strong sidewinds in the following situations:

- Emerging from a tunnel

- Driving over a bridge
- Driving on an embankment
- Driving through a cutting
- Being overtaken by a large truck or bus
- Overtaking a large truck or bus

Flat Tire

If a blowout or flat tire occurs while you are driving, calmly grip the steering wheel and gradually apply the brakes to decelerate. (Hard braking would be dangerous because it could cause the steering wheel to be pulled to one side.) Stop the vehicle in a safe place, and change the tire.

Hard Bump Under Vehicle

If the underside of the vehicle receives a hard bump, stop in a safe place where the vehicle will not obstruct traffic and check for brake fluid leakage, fuel leakage and component damage. If any part of the vehicle is damaged or broken, promptly have the vehicle inspected and repaired.

Highways

- Speeds on highways are higher than those on regular roads, so there is more danger. Also, a breakdown on a highway represents a hazard to other vehicles and

can cause an accident. Concentrate on safe driving. Remember to perform daily pre-operation inspections and use highway driving techniques. When performing daily pre-operation inspections, perform the checks shown in the table on the left with particularly great care.

Refer to *Owner Checks and Services* ⇨ 226.

- When merging with traffic on a highway, use the turn signal lights to indicate your intentions ahead of time. Speed up sufficiently when you are in the acceleration lane. Pay attention to vehicles behind you and to conditions in the lane you are joining. Merge in such a way that you do not obstruct vehicles in the lane.
- Your sense of how fast you are traveling becomes distorted on long highway drives. Constantly keep an eye on the speedometer, and maintain a suitable headway distance.
- During high-speed driving, even a little turn of the steering wheel causes a big movement of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel slowly.

- Excessive use of the brake pedal is extremely dangerous because it rapidly wears the brake linings and causes brake fade. Make effective use of the engine brake when you want to decelerate.
- When you want to turn off a highway, use the turn signal lights to indicate your intentions ahead of time. Paying attention to vehicles behind you, turn off the highway smoothly so as not to obstruct other vehicles.

Brake Fade : Frequent use of the brakes can cause the brakes to overheat so that the frictional force of the brake linings decreases and the brakes become less effective than normal. This phenomenon is called brake fade.

Braking

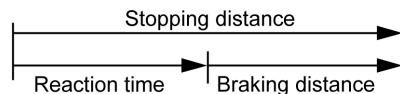
Brake Operation

The brakes give strong braking force with only light pressure on the pedal. Do not press the brake pedal hard except in the event of an emergency.

Actual stopping distances vary greatly. Your ability to stop safely will be greatly affected by the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the

road, whether it is wet, dry or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; the weight of the load; and the amount of brake force applied. Please allow for realistic stopping distances to avoid unnecessary heavy braking. That means better braking, longer brake life and safer driving.

Stopping Distance



The stopping distance of a vehicle involves reaction time and braking distance. Deciding to push the brake pedal is reaction time. Applying the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a complete stop is braking distance. Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight all play a part. Braking distance will vary based

reaction time, the amount of force applied to the brake pedal and the speed of the vehicle.

When driving, bear the stopping distance in mind. Maintain a speed and headway distance that allow you to stop safely even if a hazard occurs.

Overriding Accelerator with Brakes

In the unlikely event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck, apply the brakes firmly and steadily to reduce engine power and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, move the selector lever to the P (Park) position, and apply the parking brake. In a safe location, inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference and remove the item causing the interference, if any is found. If none is found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed.

Braking Techniques

For the most effective braking and for maximum life from brake system components, follow these suggestions when possible:

- Apply the brakes gradually as road and load conditions permit. Reduce pedal pressure as speed drops so that a very light pressure is used at the end of the stop.
- Do not pump the brake pedal as this will only deplete the vacuum reserve or the hydraulic brake booster (HBB) accumulator reserve.
- To get maximum braking while maintaining vehicle control, use a "squeeze" braking technique. Do this by pushing on the brake pedal with steadily increasing pressure. If possible, steer around obstacles when there is not enough room to stop.

Brake System Warning Light

Caution

If the brake system warning light comes on during operation, have brake system checked immediately.

Refer to *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators* ⇨ 47.

When the Brakes Do Not Work **Warning**

It is very dangerous to suddenly pull the parking brake lever all the way while moving at high speed. Reduce speed first by shifting down and then gradually pull the parking brake lever.

You and others could be seriously injured.

If the brakes do not work in an unexpected situation, promptly shift down from D6, D4, 2 (second), and 1 (first) gear using the selector lever to reduce the speed and gradually pull the parking brake lever to stop the vehicle on the side of the road while firmly holding on to the steering wheel.

See *Parking Brake* ⇨ 139.

Riding the Brake **Warning**

"Riding the brake" by resting your foot on the pedal, when you do not intend to brake, can overheat the brakes and wear out the brake linings faster. This may
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

also damage the brakes and will waste fuel. It can also result in reduced braking performance.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Applying the Parking Brake

Except in an emergency, do not apply the parking brake until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Applying the parking brake before the vehicle has stopped can cause a breakdown.

Refer to *Parking Brake* ⇨ 139.

Parking Safely on a Slope

Avoid parking your vehicle on a slope as much as possible and choose a level and flat place. If you must park your vehicle on a slope, be sure to set the parking brake fully. Make sure that the vehicle does not move, and block the wheels with chocks for added safety. Also, leave the vehicle in gear to further ensure that it will not move. Leave the steering wheel turned such that the vehicle will be stopped by an obstruction (for example, the curb) in the unlikely event that it moves.

Stopping and Parking with the Engine Running **Warning**

When parking with the engine running, first come to a complete stop, then firmly apply the parking brake, then move the selector lever to the "P" (Park) position. Unless you take these steps, any unintended pressure on the accelerator pedal could cause an accident.

To reduce the chance of personal injury and/or vehicle damage due to engine overheating, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by the engine coolant temperature gauge, immediate action is required to correct the condition. Continued operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in a fire.

Do Not Forget to Release the Parking Brake

Pulling away with the parking brake still applied can damage the brake system.

Before pulling away, make sure the parking brake is not set by checking that the parking brake indicator light is not on.

Be Sure to Have the Engine Running When the Vehicle is Moving

 Warning

When the engine is not running, the power steering system does not work so the steering wheel is hard to turn. Also, the brake booster does not work so there is little braking ability. If you coast down a slope without the engine running, you would not be able to properly control the vehicle and could have an accident.

Parking, or Leaving Driver's Seat

 Danger

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the selector lever is not fully in "P" (Park) or the parking brake is not applied all the way. Your vehicle can roll or move suddenly.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are parking on level ground, follow the steps below. (If you have to park on a hill, also turn your front wheels so the vehicle will roll away from traffic.)

You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

1. Hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and apply the parking brake all the way before shifting the transmission. Follow the Parking Brake instructions in this manual for your vehicle.
2. To move the selector lever to P (Park), hold in the button on the lever and push the lever all the way toward the front of your vehicle.
3. Turn the key to "LOCK".
4. Remove the key and take it with you.
5. Before you leave the driver seat, be sure the vehicle is not moving, or check that your vehicle is in Park by trying to pull the selector lever out of P (Park) by pulling the selector lever toward you

without pushing the button. If you can do this, it means that the selector lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Do Not Touch the Selector Lever While the Vehicle is Stationary with the Engine Idling

Do not touch the selector lever while the vehicle is stationary with the engine idling. If you touch the selector lever at this time, a gear could be selected and the vehicle could move even with the parking brake applied. The risk of knocking against the selector lever and causing an accident is particularly great when you move in or out of your seat.

Driving Down a Long Slope

When driving down a long slope, use the engine brake together with the foot brakes. Using the engine brake and low-gears reduces the work load on the foot brakes and yields greater braking force. Even so, use the foot brakes appropriately to prevent the engine over-revving.

Frequent use of the foot brakes can cause vapor lock and brake fade, resulting in reduced brake effectiveness.

Brake Fade : Frequent use of the brakes can cause the brakes to overheat so that the frictional force of the brake linings decreases and the brakes become less effective than normal. This phenomenon is called brake fade.

Vapor Lock : If the brakes overheat due to frequent use, the heat can cause the brake fluid to boil so that air bubbles are created in the brake fluid. Pressing the brake pedal simply compresses the air bubbles; pressure is not transmitted to the wheel cylinders, so the brakes' effectiveness sharply deteriorates. This phenomenon is called vapor lock.

Even so, you should be very careful when using engine braking in a low gear because the engine is likely to over-rev. See *Selector Lever* ⇨ 136.

The engine should never be allowed to exceed the governed speed. Use the vehicle service brakes intermittently and/or shift to higher transmission gear to prevent engine overspeed. A rule of thumb for gear selection is that the vehicle should be driven down a grade in the same gear that would be used to climb that grade.

Warning

To reduce the risk of personal injury, before going down a steep or long grade, reduce speed and shift the transmission to the next lower gear. This will help control your speed. Do not hold the brake pedal down too long or too often while going down a steep or long grade. This could cause the brakes to get hot and not to work as well. As a result, the truck will not slow down at the usual rate. Failure to take these steps could result in loss of vehicle control.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Brake Effectiveness When the Vehicle Has Been Driven on a Flooded Road or Washed

Warning

When the vehicle is driven on a flooded road, parked on a flooded road or washed, water can get into the brakes and reduce their effectiveness. If the brakes do not work well afterward, drive slowly and gently press the brake pedal
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

several times until the brakes dry out and start working normally. Always do this after driving through water or washing the vehicle to help reduce the risk of personal injury. Before parking the vehicle in winter, press the brake pedal several times in the same way to get rid of moisture in the brakes. Otherwise, the moisture in the brakes may freeze and make the vehicle immovable.

You and others could be seriously injured.

If the vehicle must be driven on a flooded road or is parked in an area that becomes flooded, promptly perform a check for the following points:

- Effectiveness of the brakes
- Water-ingress or damage to drum brakes, disc brakes
- Engine damage due to water-ingress
- Shorting of electrical components
- Oil level and degradation (cloudiness) of the engine, transmission, differential
- Greasing of each components (lubrication)

Steering

Do Not Leave the Steering Wheel Fully Turned for a Long Time

Warning

If you leave the steering wheel fully turned for a long time, the oil in the power steering oil pump will become extremely hot. This would cause poor lubrication, oil tank damage and seal deterioration, leading to power steering oil pump damage, power steering unit damage and power steering hose damage. As a result the steering wheel could become extremely hard to turn and a fire or other accident could occur.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Steering Wheel

If the steering parts have excess play or looseness or if any abnormal condition is noted, have the steering system checked immediately.

Driving on Wet Roads

Driving on Slippery Surface or Driving in Bad Weather (Rain, Icy Roads, Snowy Roads, etc.)

In bad weather, visibility is reduced and slippery road surfaces increase stopping distances. Drive more slowly than you would in good weather. Also, avoid sharp turns of the steering wheel and hard braking. Use engine brakes together with the foot brakes to decelerate.

You may not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues—such as enough water or ice on the road to make a "mirrored surface"—and slow down when there is any doubt.

There is a risk of hydroplaning, particularly where water tends to collect on the road surface. Drive at speeds that allow you to stay in complete control.

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, first check the depth of the water and then drive through the water at a slow, constant speed. There is a risk that water will get into the engine's cylinders and

cause engine damage (water hammering). Keep your speed down, and drive with great care.

Hydroplaning : If a vehicle is driven at high speed on a road that is covered with water, a layer of water can form between the tires and road surface, causing the tires to lose their grip and slide across the water. This phenomenon is called hydroplaning. It is dangerous because it makes the steering wheel and brakes useless.

Refer to *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 191.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Narrow or Congested Roads

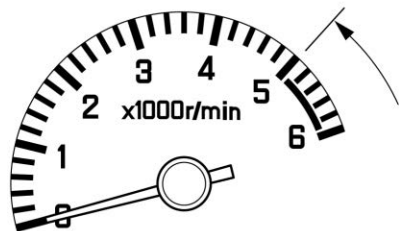
When passing or overtaking a vehicle on a narrow mountain road or on a narrow or congested urban road, pay careful attention to obstacles on either side and to the condition of the shoulder of the road.

When turning, the rear wheels will follow tighter curves than the front wheels. Use the mirrors to confirm safety.

Driving Uphill or Downhill

Downshifts are performed for two main purposes:

- For engine braking on a steep and/or long downward slope
- For responsiveness and economy on an uphill slope



Drive at a speed that does not cause the tachometer needle to enter the red zone.

Uphill

Shift down well ahead of time in order to avoid a heavy load to the engine.

Downhill

- Be careful not to drive too fast on a downhill road.
- Use the same gear(s) that you used to drive up the hill. Also, use the engine brake in order to avoid going too fast.

- Do not let the engine overrun.
- When going down on a steep slope, avoid driving the vehicle backward as much as possible. Drive it forward slowly on the down slope.
- Compared with forward movement, the braking distance of backward movement is longer, and the steering response of that is worse.
- If you must drive the vehicle backward, drive it very carefully and gradually by moving and stopping repeatedly in order to stop it any time.

Engine Brake : Engine brake is the braking effect that occurs when you release the accelerator pedal while driving. The lower the gear, the stronger the engine brake.

Overrunning : An engine overrun is an engine-speed increase that causes the tachometer needle to enter the red zone. It is dangerous because it can cause engine failure.

Winter Driving

Recommendations for Driving in Cold Regions

The following recommendations apply to snowbound regions and to mountainous regions, ski resorts and other areas of extreme cold and/or snowfall. Please follow them also for reference in winter in other regions.

For the sake of your vehicle, make the winter preparations described in the links below. Also have these preparations made before driving to a cold region.

See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 153.

See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 158.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 165.

See *Battery - North America* ⇨ 169.

When Ice Prevents You from Putting Your Key in the Door or Opening the Door

If you try to force the key into the door, you could bend it. And if you try to pull the door open with undue force, the rubber seal around the door could come unstuck or

become damaged. Use warm water to melt the ice, then quickly wipe it away and open the door.

If the wipers, electric door mirrors, or power windows freeze up, also use warm water to melt the ice and then operate the system. Otherwise, you could damage the mechanism and drain the battery. After that, wipe the water away.

Before Driving in Cold Regions

Getting In and Out of the Vehicle

The step can get icy in cold regions. Be careful not to slip when getting in and out of the vehicle.

Before Sitting in the Driver's Seat

Remove snow and ice from your shoes when getting into the vehicle. If you try to drive with snow on your shoes, your shoes would slip on the pedals and you would not be able to press the pedals properly, meaning that your driving would be inconsistent. Also, the cabin could become more humid, causing the glass to fog up.

Check Fuel Level

Fuel consumption increases when tire chains are used. Determine how much fuel you need to reach your destination and fill up the tank in advance. Refer to *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ 49.

Removing Snow from Glass and Underbody

Do not use a sharp implement to remove snow. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.

To maintain an adequate field of view, use a plastic scraper to remove snow and frost from the glass surfaces. By using a plastic scraper, you can remove the snow and frost without scratching the glass. At this time, check whether the wiper blades are frozen onto the glass.

Also, look under the vehicle and remove any lumps of ice that are stuck to the underbody. Be careful not to damage components.

Driving on Snowy or Frozen Roads

On slippery roads, never accelerate rapidly, brake hard, decelerate rapidly or make sharp turns of the steering wheel.

There is a risk of reduced grip between the tires and road surface and of increased braking distances. The danger of icy road surfaces is particularly great on bridges, in shady places and where there are puddles.

Keep your speed down and be sure to use tire chains or winter tires on snowy or frozen road surfaces.

Use lower gears to overcome the retardation effect of the engine. Apply the foot brakes lightly.

Pay Attention to the Way the Steering Wheel Turns and Feels

On snowy roads, water and snow splashed up by the tires can freeze and accumulate inside the fenders, making the steering wheel hard to turn. From time to time, get out of the vehicle and remove any accumulated snow.

Check the Brakes from Time to Time

When the vehicle is driven or parked on a snowy surface, ice can form on the brakes, decreasing their effectiveness. From time to time while you are driving, press the brake pedal lightly and check the effectiveness of the brakes. Pay attention to vehicles both ahead of and behind you when checking the brakes in this way.

Also, check the effectiveness of the brakes as soon as possible when starting to drive the vehicle after it has been parked. If the brakes do not work well, drive slowly and gently press the brake pedal several times until the brakes dry out and start working normally.

Parking in Cold Regions

When snow collects around the wheels and the lights, try to remove it before night falls.

Do not apply the parking brake in extremely cold weather, such as in temperatures at or below 0 °C (32 °F). If you leave the parking brake applied, the wires and brake shoes could freeze up, making it impossible for you to release the parking brake. Be sure to park the vehicle in gear.

Be sure to put chocks against the tires.

Whenever possible, park in a garage to help prevent parts from freezing up and to help make the engine easy to start.

Warning

If you park in a place where there is a lot of snowfall, snow accumulating around the vehicle could limit ventilation. Running the engine with the vehicle in these conditions could cause exhaust gases to enter the cabin, resulting in carbon monoxide poisoning. Take preventive action by, for example, clearing the snow around the vehicle.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Do not park under trees or under the eaves of a building. Chunks of ice could fall on the vehicle if you park in such a place.

Cleaning the Vehicle after Driving on Snowy Roads

- The vehicle speed sensors are fitted on the wheels. When removing snow, ice, and other incrustation, take great care not to damage the components.
- Do not use a sharp implement to remove snow. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts. Refer to *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 137.

Remove snow that has stuck to the inside of the fenders and to the brake hoses. Otherwise, it may damage components. After driving on a salted road, wash the underside of the vehicle as soon as possible to prevent the salt from causing rust. Spraying water under high pressure is an effective way to get the salt off.

After washing the vehicle, wipe the door openings dry.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

When Driving on Bad Roads

Caution

Do not spin wheels faster than 32 km/h (20 mph) in mud, sand, snow, ice, or other poor road conditions. Damage may result from excessive wheel spinning, including tire, transmission, and/or rear axle malfunction.

If the vehicle gets stuck and it is difficult to get out, immediately stop driving and have the vehicle towed.

If the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, snow or ice, move the selector lever from 2 to the R position. Apply a light pressure to the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in gear. Remove your foot from the accelerator and press the brake pedal while shifting. Do not race the engine. For best traction, avoid spinning the wheels. When you cannot avoid driving through deep mud, using tire chains is an effective way to avoid getting stuck.

When driving in sand or mud, avoid hard braking, sudden acceleration, and sharp turns of the steering wheel. Such actions could get the vehicle stuck and make it difficult to get out.

After driving through deep mud: any mud stuck to the vehicle can harm the steering, brakes and powertrain. Wash the vehicle and remove all mud and other debris.

The vehicle speed sensors are fitted on the wheels. When removing mud and other debris, take great care not to damage the components.

Do not use a sharp implement to remove mud. Sharp edges could damage rubber parts.

Refer to *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 137 and *Exterior Care* ⇨ 210.

Emergencies (Troubleshooting)

Troubleshooting

Performing regular inspections and maintenance prevents damage. Be sure to perform inspections and maintenance at regular intervals. Also, quickly rectify any fault in the vehicle (even a small fault) to prevent it from becoming more serious. If a symptom shown in the following table occurs, perform inspections and take corrective action in accordance with the table. If you are unable to perform a repair, the corrective action shown in the table does not eliminate a symptom or you cannot locate a fault, contact the nearest dealer.

Any item for which there is a ☉ in the "Corrective action" column requires repairs and adjustments. Contact the nearest dealer.

Symptom		Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Engine does not start	Starter does not turn over, or weak	Discharged batteries	Recharge or replace	See <i>Battery - North America</i> ⇨ 169
		Battery terminals detached, loose, or corroded	After repairing corroded section, connect the terminals firmly	-
		Starter ground wire terminal detached, loose, or corroded	After repairing corroded section, connect the terminals firmly	-
		Engine oil viscosity too high	Change to an oil with proper viscosity	See <i>Engine Oil</i> ⇨ 153
		Starter or electrical system is faulty	⊙	-
Engine does not start	Starter turns over	No fuel	Make sure there are no fuel leaks, and then add fuel	-
		Fuel pump clogged	⊙	-
		Pressure regulator is faulty	⊙	-
		Ignition system is faulty	⊙	-
		Engine control (electrical system) is faulty	⊙	-

Symptom	Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Engine starts, but immediately stops	Idling speed too low	⊙	-
	Fuel filter is clogged	⊙	-
	Air cleaner is clogged	⊙	-
	Common rail system is faulty	⊙	-
	Fuel pump is clogged	⊙	-
	Fuel system is faulty	⊙	-
	Engine control (electrical system) is faulty	⊙	-
Unsteady engine speed	Fuel system is faulty	⊙	-
	Ignition system is faulty	⊙	-
	Engine control (electrical system) is faulty	⊙	-

Symptom	Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Engine is overheating	No engine coolant	Add engine coolant	See <i>Engine Coolant</i> ⇨ 158
	Front of radiator is clogged with dirt	Wash clean with tap water	See <i>Exterior Care</i> ⇨ 210
	Radiator cap not sufficiently tightened	Make sure it is firmly tightened or replace the radiator cap	-
	Fan belt loose	Adjust the tension or replace the belt	See <i>Engine Drive Belt Routing</i> ⇨ 247
	Engine coolant dirty	⊙	-
	Fan clutch is faulty	⊙	-
	Radiator cap dirty or faulty	Clean or replace	-
Oil pressure is low	Improper engine oil viscosity	Change to an oil with proper viscosity	See <i>Engine Oil</i> ⇨ 153
	Engine oil level too low	Add engine oil	See <i>Engine Oil</i> ⇨ 153
	Engine inner components are faulty	⊙	-
	Meter, indicator/warning lights or switches faulty	⊙	-

Symptom	Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Not enough engine power	Parking brake not fully released	Make sure it is fully released	-
	Brake dragging	⊙	-
	Air cleaner clogged	⊙	-
	Fuel filter clogged	⊙	-
	Engine control system faulty	⊙	-
	Common rail system faulty	⊙	-
	Engine faulty	⊙	-
Brakes not effective	Drum-to-lining gap too large	⊙	-
	Air in brake fluid	⊙	-
	Brake system failure	⊙	-
Uneven braking	Unbalanced air pressure in tires	Adjust to proper air pressure	See <i>Wheels and Tires</i> ⇒ 191
	Tire unevenly worn	Replace tire	See <i>Wheels and Tires</i> ⇒ 191
	Drum brake out of adjustment	⊙	-
	Poor wheel alignment	⊙	-

Symptom	Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Steering wheel hard to turn	Loaded too far forward	Load properly	-
	Power steering fluid level too low	Add fluid	See <i>Power Steering Fluid</i> ⇨ 164
	Insufficient air in front tires	Adjust to proper inflation pressure	See <i>Wheels and Tires</i> ⇨ 191
Excessive play in the steering wheel	Wheel studs and nuts loose	Tighten to the specified torque	See <i>Wheels and Tires</i> ⇨ 191
	Unbalanced inflation pressure in the tires	Adjust to proper inflation pressure	See <i>Wheels and Tires</i> ⇨ 191
	Unbalanced tires	⊙	-
	Excessive steering wheel free play	⊙	-
Poor steering wheel return	Poor lubrication in the steering mechanisms	Lubricate the mechanism	-
	Poor wheel alignment	⊙	-

Symptom		Cause	Corrective Action	Reference
Loud or abnormal noises	From the transmission	Insufficient transmission oil	Add oil	See <i>Automatic Transmission Fluid</i> ⇨ 155
		Transmission inner components faulty	⊙	-
	From differential	Insufficient differential gear oil	Add oil	See <i>Rear Axle (Gear Oil Viscosity Chart)</i> ⇨ 170 or <i>Rear Axle (Oil Level Check)</i> ⇨ 171
		Differential inner components faulty	⊙	-
	From the suspension	Spring pins, shackles, or stoppers worn	⊙	-
	From the driveshaft	Poor lubrication in each component	Lubricate them	See <i>Owner Checks and Services</i> ⇨ 226
		Splines or bearings worn	⊙	-

Emergencies (Disabled Vehicle)

When the Vehicle Breaks Down

When the Vehicle Stops While Driving

The brake booster will no longer operate and brake effectiveness will be reduced. If the engine cannot be started, promptly have the vehicle inspected and repaired.

When the Engine Stalls and Cannot Be Restarted

Move the selector lever to the "N" position and push the vehicle to a safe place.

Warning

Vehicle operations will change, so stop the vehicle in a safe place with the following in mind.

The power steering system will not work so the steering wheel will be hard to turn. It will require more strength than during normal operation.

As the brake booster will no longer be functional, brake effectiveness will be greatly reduced. Be sure to apply more pressure than usual to the brake pedal.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the power assist steering system goes out because the engine has stopped or the assist system has malfunctioned, the vehicle can still be steered. However, much greater effort is needed, especially in sharp turns or at low speeds.

You or others could be seriously injured.

When the Vehicle Breaks Down During Driving

1. Use the hazard warning flasher any time to warn other drivers, day or night, and pull the vehicle immediately over to a safe place that does not impede traffic (shoulder). Place the triangle reflectors to alert other traffic to the presence of your vehicle.
2. If the vehicle can be exited safely, have the other passengers get out and wait in a safe place.
3. If the vehicle can be exited safely, walk to a safe place and take appropriate measures by using the closest telephone, etc.

See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ 59.

If There is a Fuel Leak

Danger

Leaking fuel from the vehicle is dangerous due to possible combustion or explosion. Stop the engine immediately.

You or others could be seriously injured or killed.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Good vehicle care begins with proper break-in. While every new vehicle goes through rigid factory and dealer inspection and tests before delivery, the care you give your vehicle during the initial break-in period can pay off in longer life, better performance and more economical operation.

It is therefore always recommended that during the initial 1 000 km (600 mile) break-in period, the following few simple precautions are carefully observed.

Follow the recommendations listed below:

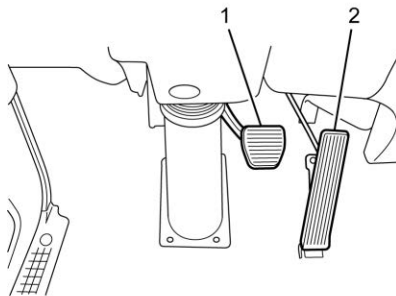
- Warm up the engine by driving easily for the first few minutes before placing it under load.
- Do not drive for extended periods at any one constant speed, either fast or slow, during the first 800 km (500 miles).
- Use the correct gear to maintain the desired road speed without lugging the engine.
- Avoid racing the engine, full-throttle starts and aggressive application of brakes when stopping.
- Keep tires properly inflated for the load carried.
- Check lubricant levels in the engine and transmission weekly.
- For vehicles with gasoline engines, keep speeds below 97 km/h (60 mph) for the first 800 km (500 miles).

Mechanical Driveshaft Brake Burnish Procedure

It is recommended that the driveshaft mounted parking brake be burnished as part of the new vehicle break-in procedure. Increased parking brake performance will result when the parking brake is burnished as specified below:

- Make 10 moderate stops, using the hand brake, from 16 km/h (10 mph) while spacing the stops a minimum of 4 km (2.5 miles) apart.
- Operate the vehicle at 32 km/h (20 mph) between stops.

Pedals



Sit in a correct driving position on the seat and operate the brake pedal (1) and accelerator pedal (2) with your right foot. To avoid accidentally pressing the wrong pedal, check the pedal positions and practice putting your foot on the desired pedal.

Warning

A can or bottle rolling on the floor may prevent brake pedal operation if it is caught under the pedal. This is very dangerous. A floor mat must be placed correctly. An incorrectly installed floor mat may hinder the free movement of each pedal. You and others could be seriously injured.

Ignition Positions

Engine Control Switch

Warning

While driving, never turn the engine control switch to the LOCK position. The key could be removed from the switch, which then locks the steering wheel. This is extremely dangerous.

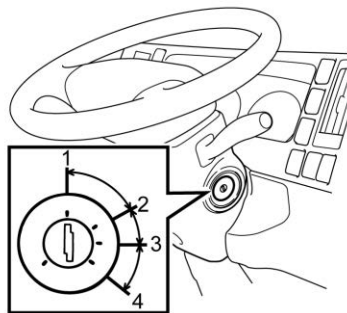
You and others could be seriously injured.

Caution

After starting the engine, do not turn the engine control switch to the START position. Otherwise, the starter motor may be damaged.

Using electrical devices such as the audio system for an extended time period with the engine stopped can completely discharge the battery.

The starting circuit, engine alarm circuits and accessory circuits are all controlled by the engine control switch.



1 LOCK : Lock is in the position fully counterclockwise. In this position, the key can be inserted or removed. To place the engine control switch in the LOCK position, press and hold the key in the ACC position and then turn it to the LOCK position. If you will leave the vehicle, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until it locks. The steering wheel will be locked to help prevent theft.

2 ACC : Accessory is in the first position clockwise. In this position, the audio and other accessories can be used with the engine stopped.

3 ON : This ON position is in the second position clockwise. The key stays in this position while the engine is running. Engine control, warning circuits, gauge circuits, and accessory circuits are energized.

4 START : On all engines, start is in the position furthest clockwise. The engine is started in this position. Turn the key against spring pressure to energize the starter. When key is released, spring pressure returns it to the ON position. Release the key as soon as the engine has started.

If the key cannot be turned from the LOCK position to the ON position, lightly move the steering wheel clockwise and counterclockwise while trying to turn the key.

Starting and Stopping the Vehicle

Check around the Vehicle before Starting the Engine

Proper care and operation will not only extend the service life of your vehicle but also improve fuel economy.

Before pulling away, perform a thorough safety check, making sure there are no children or obstructions around the vehicle. Take off the chocks after confirming that the parking brake is securely applied.

Sit behind the wheel, adjust the seat position, and buckle up the seat belt. The passengers are also required to buckle up the seat belts.

Adjust the positions of the steering wheel and mirrors. Lock the doors. Turn the power of the dome light or accessories OFF before starting the engine. See *Seat Position* ⇨ 21, *Seat Belts* ⇨ 25, *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 43, and *Mirrors* ⇨ 17.

Keep the Floor Around the Driver's Seat Clean and Tidy

Warning

It is extremely dangerous to have empty cans, empty bottles or other items rolling around on the floor because they could get trapped under the brake pedal and prevent brake application. For proper pedal operation, it is also essential to lay

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

floor mats properly. Incorrectly installed floor mats would hinder free movement of the pedals.

Do not use the dashboard pocket or the top of the dashboard as a place to put items that could roll, which could interfere with your driving. You and others could be seriously injured.

Choose Your Footwear Suitable for Driving

Warning

Choose footwear that ensures proper operation of pedals when driving the vehicle. Use of footwear unsuitable for driving may cause an accident.

Checks Before Operating

Allow the engine to warm up before driving. While the engine is warming up, the following checks should be made:

1. Observe the engine oil pressure warning light. The light should go out when the engine is running. If it stays on, shut the engine off and find the cause.

2. Look at the engine coolant temperature gauge. If the gauge reaches the H (HOT) area, stop the engine and find the cause of the overheating.
3. Check that the battery warning light has gone out. The light should go off and stay off at normal idle speeds. If the light does not go out or comes on during normal operation, have the charging system checked.
4. Check that the brake low vacuum warning light is out and that the vacuum buzzer is not sounding. It is normal for the warning buzzer to sound for a few seconds after the engine starts. If the light and buzzer remain on, do not drive the vehicle until the cause has been found and corrected.
5. Look at the brake system warning light. It should be out when the parking brake is released and the engine is running. If it stays on, it could mean that the brake fluid level is low. Check the brake fluid reservoir. This condition must be corrected before moving the vehicle.

Caution

To reduce the chance of personal injury and/or vehicle damage due to engine overheating, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by the engine coolant temperature gauge, immediate action is required to correct the condition.

Continued operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in a fire.

Starting the Engine

Do not keep the engine control switch in the START position for more than about 10 seconds. Operating the starter for too long might cause starter and battery failure or may result in overheating.

When the engine does not start, wait for 20 to 30 seconds and then turn the engine control switch again.

Before starting the engine sit in the driver seat, check that the parking brake is firmly engaged, the selector lever is in the P or N (P is preferred) position and the shift

indicator also shows P or N, and firmly press the brake pedal to start the engine. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ 120.

Warning

Do not keep the starter motor engaged for more than 10 seconds at a time, or the starter motor and the battery will be adversely affected. Also, fire may occur due to overheating. Repeat the steps after a 20 to 30 seconds break.

1. Shift your selector lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). Your engine will not start in any other position—that's a safety feature. To restart when you're already moving, use N (Neutral) only.
Do not try to shift to P (Park) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when your vehicle is stopped.
2. Do not push the accelerator pedal before starting your engine. In some other vehicles you might need to do this, but because of your vehicle's computer systems, you do not need to.

3. Turn your ignition key to Start. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm.

If the engine still does not start, wait another 20 to 30 seconds and do Step 5 again.

Hot Engine Restart

If your engine is already hot and then stalls, turn your ignition key to ACC. Then, turn your key to ON, and wait about 20 to 30 seconds before you restart your engine.

When the engine starts, let go of the key and the accelerator pedal.

Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the fuel injection system operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly.

If you ever have to have your vehicle towed, see the part of this manual that tells how to do it without damaging your vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ 208.

Recommendations for Warming Up the Engine

The engine is sufficiently warmed up when the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge starts to move.

- Do not race the engine or quickly accelerate before the engine has sufficiently warmed up. Oil would not have adequately reached and lubricated components, and a breakdown may result.
- The exhaust pipe becomes extremely hot while the engine is idling. Before warming up the engine, make sure there is no flammable material, such as grass, waste paper, oil, or old tires near the exhaust pipe.

Cold Weather Starting

If you plan ahead for cold weather, starting and driving your vehicle should be no problem.

Oil gets thicker as it gets colder, which slows down the engine cranking speed.

To be sure the engine can turn fast enough to start, use SAE 0W-30 viscosity engine oil when prevailing temperatures drop below 0 °C (32 °F). See the oil quality and oil viscosity recommendations. Using the proper

viscosity oil will make starting easier down to -23 °C (-10 °F). When prevailing temperatures drop below -23 °C (-10 °F), the optional engine block heater may be needed for starting.

Stopping the Engine

When stopping the gasoline engine, take the following steps:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Move the selector lever to the P position and make sure that the shift indicator shows P.
4. Allow the engine to idle for approximately 3 minutes.
5. Turn the engine control switch to the ACC or LOCK position.

To prevent the battery from going dead, turn the engine control switch to the ACC or LOCK position after stopping the engine. If you leave the vehicle for an extended period of time, place the engine control switch in the LOCK position.

If the Vehicle Has Not Been Used for a Long Period

If the vehicle is to be placed in storage for a prolonged period of time, certain precautions must be taken to prevent deterioration. See your authorized dealer for more detailed information.

- Before using a vehicle that has not been driven for a long period, check the engine and transmission for oil leakage, and make sure the oil is at the required levels. If there is insufficient oil, it will not adequately reach and lubricate components, and a breakdown will result.
- Start the engine and allow it to idle for at least 5 minutes. Check for abnormal noises.
- For instructions on warming up the engine, refer to "Starting the Engine" previously in this section.

Operating Temperature**Recommendations for Warming Up the Engine**

The engine is sufficiently warmed up when the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge starts to move.

Do not race the engine or quickly accelerate before the engine has sufficiently warmed up. Oil would not have adequately reached and lubricated components, and a breakdown may result.

The exhaust pipe becomes extremely hot while the engine is idling. Before warming up the engine, make sure there is no flammable material, such as grass, waste paper, oil, or old tires near the exhaust pipe.

Engine Warm-up System

During cold ambient conditions, the automatic engine warm-up system operates to reduce engine warm-up time during idling.

Automatic Engine Warm-up : When the engine is idling with the engine coolant temperature below 62 °C (144 °F), the engine warm-up increases engine idle speed so that the engine is warmed more quickly. Warm-up is cancelled when the accelerator pedal is pressed, and resumed when the pedal is released. Warm-up is automatically cancelled entirely after the engine coolant temperature rises above 65 °C (149 °F).

Engine Heater

Engine Block Heater

If the vehicle is parked in a garage, the block heater should not be needed until the garage temperature drops below -23°C (-10°F) regardless of outside temperature.

The engine block heater is designed to warm the block area that will let the engine run faster. To use the heater:

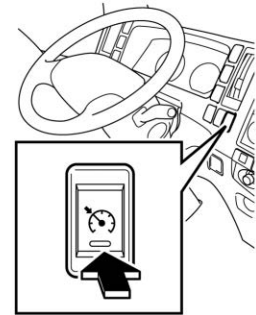
1. On single cab vehicles, tilt the cab.
2. Unwrap the electrical cord and remove the protective cap.
3. Plug the cord into any three-prong 110 volt outlet (normal household current). It may require several hours to sufficiently heat the engine. Outside temperature, oil viscosity, etc., will affect how long the block heater should remain plugged in. Contact your dealer for the conditions in your area.
4. After using the heater, be sure to restore the cord properly, to help keep it away from moving engine parts.

If the cord is too short, use a heavy duty, three-prong extension cord. Do not use an extension cord such as you would use for a lamp, because the cord may overheat.

The engine should go through a warm-up period to warm up the engine oil before placing engine under load. This will ensure proper lubrication of the engine. See *Cab Tilting* ⇨ 151.

High Idle System

Use high idle mode to increase engine idle speed to 1,200 r/min when the vehicle is stationary.





Activating High Idle Mode

Follow the below procedure to activate the high idle mode:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the selector lever in P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.
3. Do not press the brake pedal.
4. Press the cruise control main switch to set it to ON. At this time, the operation indicating light will turn to green.
5. Turn and hold the cruise control set switch in the SET position. After approximately 3 seconds the cruise control set indicator light will begin to flash slowly and the engine idle will increase to 1,200 r/min.

Canceling High Idle Mode

Any of the following actions will cancel high idle mode.

- The cruise control main switch is set to OFF.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The parking brake is released.
- The selector lever is moved from P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed, accelerating the engine beyond the engine speed threshold.

The cruise set indicator light will stop flashing and the engine speed will return to normal.

Engine Checks Before Operating

Checks Before Operating

Allow the engine to warm up before placing the engine under heavy load driving. While the engine is warming up under light load, the following checks should be made:

1. Observe the red engine oil pressure warning light. The light should go out when the engine is running. If it stays on, shut the engine off and find the cause.
2. Look at the engine coolant temperature gauge. If the gauge reaches the H (HOT) area, stop the engine and find the cause of the overheating.
3. Check that the battery warning light has gone out. The light should go off and stay off at normal idle speeds. If the light does not go out or comes on during normal operation, have the charging system checked.
4. Check that the brake low vacuum warning light is out and that the vacuum buzzer is not sounding. It is normal for the warning buzzer to sound for a few seconds after the engine starts. If the

light and buzzer remain on, do not drive the vehicle until the cause has been found and corrected.

5. Look at the brake system warning light. It should be out when the parking brake is released and the engine is running. If it stays on, it could mean that the brake fluid level is low. Check the brake fluid reservoir. This condition must be corrected before moving the vehicle.

Warning

To reduce the chance of personal injury and/or vehicle damage due to engine overheating, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by the engine coolant temperature gauge, immediate action is required to correct the condition. Continued operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in a fire.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Parking over Things That Burn

Keep Flammable Material Away from the Vehicle

The exhaust pipe is extremely hot immediately after vehicle operation. Before parking, make sure the area is free of flammable material (for example, grass, waste paper, oil or old tires). Take particular care when parking in a garage.

Use caution concerning exhaust gases while the engine is idling.

Warning

It is not recommended that this vehicle be parked, idled or operated over combustible materials such as grass or leaves. They could touch the hot exhaust system and start a fire. This is particularly important if the exhaust system has not been properly maintained. Combustible materials could catch fire from hot exhaust gases, soot, or sparks that could escape through corrosion holes or cracks. You and others could be seriously injured.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If operating, parking or idling your vehicle off-road is unavoidable, such as in farming, lumbering, commercial or recreational use:

- The driver should be aware that combustible materials could catch fire from the vehicle's hot exhaust system.
- Carry a fire extinguisher with the vehicle at these times.
- Avoid driving your vehicle through or over combustible materials such as leaves, grass vegetation or stubble high enough to touch, catch or collect on its hot exhaust system.
- Parking or idling should be done only in an area where there are no combustible materials under the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions could damage your vehicle or nearby property.

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust Emissions Caution (Carbon Monoxide)

Warning

Do not breathe exhaust gas because it contains carbon monoxide, which by itself has no color or odor. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas. It can cause unconsciousness and can be lethal.

Do not keep the engine running for any length of time in a place that is poorly ventilated. It is particularly dangerous to run the engine in a garage or other indoor place that could easily fill with exhaust gases because you could suffer carbon monoxide poisoning.

Inspect the exhaust pipe from time to time. If you notice any defect (for example, a damaged joint, or a hole or crack caused by corrosion), have checks and maintenance performed by the nearest dealer. Continuing to use the vehicle without having the defect

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

repaired would be dangerous because exhaust gases could get into the cab and cause carbon monoxide poisoning.

If at any time you think exhaust fumes are entering the cab, have the cause determined and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open. Prevent carbon monoxide from entering the cab. The best way is to keep the engine exhaust system, cab and cab ventilation system properly maintained.

We recommend that the exhaust system and cab be inspected by a competent technician:

- Each time the vehicle has an oil change.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.
- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or cab is damaged or becomes corroded.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

To allow proper operation of your vehicle's ventilation system, keep the air inlet grille clear of snow, leaves or other obstructions at all times. Do not park with the engine running or idle this vehicle for more than 10 minutes with the ventilation system control switch in the OFF position. Even with the ventilation system on, running the engine while parked or stopped for longer periods of time is not recommended. Entry of carbon monoxide into the cab is possible with a poorly repaired, damaged, or corroded exhaust system or cab. Do not run the engine in confined areas (such as garages, next to a building or near another stopped vehicles with engine running) any more than needed to move the vehicle.

When the vehicle has to be stopped in an unconfined area with the engine running for any more than a few minutes, take the following steps:

- Adjust the heating or cooling system to force outside air into the cab.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- With temperature and outlet selector knob in any position:
- Set the air selector lever to the fresh air position.
- Set the fan speed control knob to the maximum speed position.
- Keep the exhaust tailpipe area clear of snow and other material to help reduce the buildup of exhaust gases under the vehicle.

This is particularly important when parked in blizzard conditions. You and others could be seriously injured.

See *Climate Control Systems* ⇨ 93 and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.

Running the Vehicle While Parked**Warning**

To reduce the chance of personal injury and/or vehicle damage due to engine overheating, never leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine should overheat, as indicated by
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the engine coolant temperature gauge, immediate action is required to correct the condition. Continued operation of the engine, even for a short time, may result in a fire.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Automatic Transmission

On an automatic transmission vehicle, the driver does not use a clutch pedal when pulling away, changing gears, or stopping. Only the selector lever, accelerator pedal, and brake pedal are used.

Practice learning the characteristics of the automatic transmission vehicle and how to correctly operate it. When the vehicle is stationary, remember to keep the brake pedal firmly pressed, and if necessary, move the selector lever in the P or N position and apply the parking brake.

Creep : With the engine running and a gear position other than P or N selected with the selector lever, power reaches the wheels even when the accelerator pedal is not pressed, causing the vehicle to tend to move.

Furthermore, the higher the engine speed, the stronger the creep and the greater the vehicle's tendency to move.

Starting

Start the engine in either the P or the N position. The engine should not start in any other selector position. If it does, something is wrong. Have your truck checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

Always apply either the foot brake or the parking brake before shifting into any driving position. This will prevent creeping.

The engine should be running at idle when shifting from P or N to one of the driving positions. See *Selector Lever* ⇨ 136.

Caution

Do not apply water from a high-pressure washer nozzle directly to the electric connectors. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to faulty operation of the electrical system.

Caution

Never move the selector into the P position when the vehicle is in motion. This will damage the automatic transmission.

Firmly press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from moving even if it is stopped on a level road, and move the selector lever into P and firmly apply the parking brake as needed.

The engine speed rises and creeping will be stronger than usual during the conditions noted below. Keep the brake pedal firmly pressed:

- Immediately after engine start up.
- While the air conditioner is running.

How to Use the Automatic Transmission **Warning**

Before starting the engine, move the selector lever into P or N (P is preferred), make sure the shift indicator indicates P or N, pull up the parking brake lever and firmly press the brake pedal.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

When moving the selector lever to any position other than P, be sure to press the brake pedal.

Never leave the driver's seat with the selector lever placed in D6, D4, 2, 1, or R. The vehicle may start moving. When leaving the driver's seat, be sure to move the selector lever into P and securely set the parking brake.

When you move the selector lever into D6, D4, 2, 1, or R, creep will cause the vehicle to move.

When pulling away from a standstill, you must control the speed using only the accelerator pedal. Operate the accelerator pedal carefully.

Do not operate the selector lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. The vehicle may make a sudden start, possibly causing a crash.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not drive the vehicle with the transmission in neutral. Not only will the engine brake not function, but the transmission will also be damaged.

You and others could be seriously injured.

When pulling away, visually check the position of the selector lever. If you always press the push button while operating the selector lever, the lever may occasionally move to the other gear position against your intentions.

Practice operating the selector lever between the D6/D4 (gasoline engine) without pressing the push button.

Do not operate the selector lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so is dangerous because the vehicle would suddenly move.

Do not operate the automatic transmission at or near stall condition for more than five seconds. Stall condition is when the transmission is in one of the driving ranges, the engine is running at high speed, but the drive wheels are unable to move. This condition might occur if the vehicle is stuck

in deep sand or is pushing against a fixed barrier. Operating the transmission at stall condition will result in overheating and damage.

Do not hold your vehicle on an upgrade with the accelerator pedal. Doing so will result in automatic transmission overheating and damage. Use the parking brake or foot brake to hold the vehicle on an upgrade.

Even if you plan to move only a short distance, sit in the correct driving position and make sure you can firmly press the brake and accelerator pedals.

When you reverse, you twist to look rearward so pedal operation becomes difficult. Firmly press the brake pedal. Also, practice returning the selector lever immediately to the N position after reversing. When pulling away, visually check the selector lever position and the shift indicator.

When the vehicle is stopped, do not keep pressing the accelerator pedal with the selector lever in a forward gear or R position while pressing the brake pedal. Doing so may cause a breakdown.

Sit in the correct driving position, and use your right foot to operate the brake and accelerator pedals. To avoid accidentally pressing the wrong pedal, check the pedal positions and practice putting your foot on the desired pedal.

To start your vehicle:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal. After making sure the selector lever is placed into P or N, that P or N is shown in the shift indicator and that the parking brake lever is fully pulled up, place the engine control switch into the ON position.
2. Start the engine and move the selector lever into D6/D4 for forward movement, or R for backward movement while firmly pressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
3. Make sure that the shift indicator indicates the correct gear (D6/D4 for forward movement, or R for backward movement), release the parking brake, release the brake pedal, and then gradually press the accelerator pedal. The vehicle starts moving as you press the accelerator pedal further.

On a steep slope:

Make sure that the shift indicator indicates the correct gear (D6/D4 for forward movement, or R for backward movement), check the area around the vehicle is clear, release the brake pedal with your right foot, and then slowly press the accelerator pedal.

After you feel the vehicle start moving, gradually release the parking brake lever and start driving the vehicle.

When the brake pedal is not pressed, the shift lock system operates and the selector lever cannot be shifted from P to any other position.

See *Starting and Stopping the Vehicle* ⇨ 121 and *Selector Lever* ⇨ 136.

Normal Driving

When you move the selector lever from P into D6, shifting takes place in the automatic mode. Check that D6 is displayed in the shift indicator.

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too low, the transmission may not initially make automatic shift to

the 4th, 5th, and 6th gear. This condition is normal and will be resolved as the fluid temperature rises.

To Accelerate

To accelerate when the accelerator pedal is pressed further, kickdown operates and the speed increases. The transmission will downshift at speeds below 112 km/h (70 mph) to provide greater acceleration.

Kickdown

If you press the accelerator pedal fully while driving, in accordance with the current speed the gear automatically shifts down and the engine speed rises, enabling sufficient acceleration. This is called kickdown.

You can easily accelerate to the required speed when overtaking other vehicles or when joining traffic on a highway. In order to maintain speed when driving on an uphill road, as you gradually press the accelerator pedal the engine may automatically shift down in accordance to the current speed (shifts to a lower speed gear), increasing the engine speed and increasing vehicle speed.

Driving Uphill or Downhill

Uphill driving:

With the selector lever in D6/D4, if you press down on the accelerator pedal, kickdown (change to a low speed gear) may operate causing the engine revolutions to suddenly increase (increasing the speed).

Driving for a prolonged duration on an uphill road with the selector lever in D6/D4 may cause the automatic transmission fluid to overheat.

Drive with the selector lever in the D4 position to keep the engine revolutions constant to enable smoother driving with fewer changes in engine revolutions.

Driving conditions	Selector lever position
Normal uphill road	D4
Steep uphill, steep slope, mountain road with many sharp curves	2 or 1
Long uphill road	2

Downhill driving:

Do not overuse the foot brake. This will cause the brakes to overheat, reducing their effectiveness. On long downward slopes or sharp downhill sections of road, use the engine brake together with the foot brakes to control the speed.

With the selector lever in the D4 position, speeds below 121 km/h (75 mph) will increase engine braking action when traveling downgrade.

You can increase engine braking by driving with the selector lever in the 2 position.

To apply a stronger engine brake on sharp downhill sections, shift the selector lever to the 1 position when required.

See *Control of a Vehicle* ⇨ 100.

Driving at Low Speeds for Sustained Periods

Any low speed applications such as sweeper, road marking machinery, trash collectors, highway striping or moving, etc. require the following treatment to prevent the automatic transmission fluid (ATF) from overheating:

Select 1 position during low speed operation under 36 km/h (22 mph).

Select 2 position during low speed operation under 61 km/h (38 mph).

To Stop Your Vehicle

1. To temporarily stop the vehicle, press the brake pedal firmly while the selector lever is in D6/D4.
2. Use the parking brake as required. Press the brake pedal firmly, and firmly apply the parking brake.

If the vehicle is stationary for a long time, move the selector lever into the N or P position. If the selector lever is kept in D6/D4, the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid increases due to heat from the torque converter.

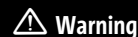
To ensure reliable brake application, be sure to use your right foot to press the brake pedal.

When leaving the driver's seat, follow the When Parking Your Vehicle procedure.

To Start After Stopping

To start again after stopping your vehicle, visually check that the selector lever is in D6/D4, and gradually press the accelerator pedal to pull away.

When Parking Your Vehicle



Warning

Do not leave your vehicle while the engine is still running. Do not park with the selector lever in a position other than P or N the vehicle may begin moving by itself due to creeping. You may

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

accidentally press the accelerator pedal when getting into the vehicle causing it to start moving suddenly.

When parking the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.

When parking on a slope, move the selector lever in the P position and block the wheels with chocks. You and others could be seriously injured.

1. Keep pressing the brake pedal firmly with your right foot, then apply the parking brake.
2. Move the selector lever in the P position, check that the shift indicator is indicating P, and slowly ease your right foot off the brake pedal.
3. Stop the engine and remove the key. When the selector lever is not placed in the P position, the shift lock system operates and the key cannot be removed.

See *Starting and Stopping the Vehicle* ⇨ 121, and *Parking Brake* ⇨ 139.

If you cannot move the selector lever from the P position after starting the engine, perform the following necessary checks:

- Check that you are firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- Check if the area where your vehicle is parked is not a slope.
- If your vehicle is parked on a downhill slope, the push operation of the selector lever may become difficult to move. In this case, you can operate the selector lever more smoothly by pushing the selector lever towards the front of the vehicle while pushing the button.

If You Cannot Move the Selector Lever from the P Position**Caution**

When the selector cannot be operated from the P position to any other position even after performing the operation below repeatedly, the shift lock system may have a failure. Have the vehicle inspected at your dealer.

If you cannot move the selector lever from the P position after starting the engine, perform the following checks:

- Check that you are firmly pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is not pressed, the shift lock system operates and the selector lever cannot be shifted from P to any other position.
- Check if the area where your vehicle is parked is not a slope.
- If your vehicle is parked on a downside slope, the operation of the selector lever may become difficult to move. In this case, you can operate the selector lever more smoothly by moving the selector lever towards the front of the vehicle while pressing the button.

Releasing the Shift Lock in an Emergency

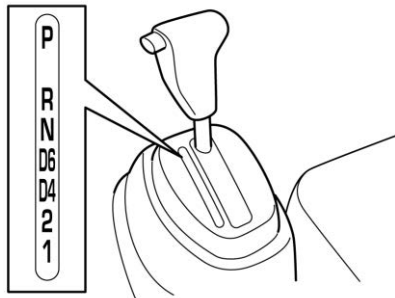
If moving of the selector lever from P to another position is still not possible even after performing the instructions given in the steps above, with the brake pedal fully pressed and the vehicle parked on a flat surface, carry out the procedure described under “If You Cannot Move the Selector Lever from the P Position”.

Actions that Can Lead to a Breakdown with an Automatic Transmission

Actions that can lead to a breakdown	Breakdown symptoms
Stopping the vehicle on an uphill road with the selector lever in a position other than N or P, the accelerator pedal pressed, and the brakes not applied.	The transmission fluid overheats.
Pressing the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time while the vehicle is in a gear other than N or P.	
Placing the selector lever into any gear with the accelerator pedal pressed and the engine speed high.	The transmission gears are overloaded.
Placing the selector lever into P before the vehicle has completely stopped.	The parking mechanism will be damaged.
Turning off the engine control switch while driving.	The transmission is not properly lubricated.
Driving with the selector lever in the N position on a long downward slope (this is dangerous due to the lack of engine brake).	

Selector Lever

Move the selector lever to make a shift into each gear position.



P (Parking) : Used when the vehicle is parked or when starting the engine. The P position is to be used with the parking brake. The P and N positions are the two positions in which the engine can be started.

R (Reverse) : Used when backing up the vehicle. Bring the truck to a complete stop before moving the selector to the R position.

N (Neutral) : Can be used when starting the engine, but for safety, get in the habit of starting the engine in the P position. The N position is used should it become necessary to tow your truck.

D6 (Drive D6 Gear) : The D6 position is for all normal forward driving. The shifting of 1st - 2nd - 3rd - 4th - 5th - 6th takes place according to the vehicle speed and accelerator pedal pressing rate. It is recommended that this range be used to improve fuel economy and reduce vehicle noise.

D4 (Drive D4 Gear) : The D4 position is when you feel shifting between 4th and 5th troublesome while climbing a long hill. Shifting of 1st - 2nd - 3rd - 4th takes place according to the vehicle speed and accelerator pedal pressing rate.

2 (Second) : May be used when driving on downhill roads or when the engine brake is required. Select the 2 position at speeds below 40 km/h (25 mph) when traveling down a moderate grade. Return the selector to the D6 position for normal driving.

1 (Low) : Used on steep downhill roads or when strong engine braking is required. Return the selector to the D6 position for normal driving.

Warning

When pulling away, always visually check the position of the selector lever for safety.

Only push the button for gear selection when necessary. Pushing the button unnecessarily may result in unintended gear selection.

Never move the selector to the P position when the truck is in motion.

Do not run the vehicle with the transmission in neutral. Not only will the engine brake not function, but the transmission will also be damaged. You and others could be seriously injured.

When repeatedly shifting between forward and reverse gears for a multiple-point turn, firmly press the brake pedal and confirm that the vehicle is completely stopped before operating the selector lever.

When pulling away, be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed as you operate the selector lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 129.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

Wheels may lock causing a skid during sudden braking or when braking on a snowy or otherwise slippery road. The ABS prevents the wheels from locking during braking by sensing a skid and thus helps maintain directional and control stability of the vehicle. However, even with the ABS, it is the driver's responsibility to drive safely.

Warning

The braking distance on slippery road surfaces is longer than that on a normal dry paved road even with an ABS-equipped vehicle. In addition the braking distance can be slightly longer in deep snow and on a gravel road when ABS is activated. Therefore, always keep in mind the road condition and tire condition (type of tires and worn condition), observe safe driving habits and drive the vehicle while keeping a proper distance between vehicles.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

ABS does not prevent accidents if you do not drive safely. Drive the vehicle at a safe speed.

Install tires of the specified size, same brand and same tread design (including winter tires) on all wheels. If different tires are installed, the braking distance becomes longer and directional control stability of the vehicle decreases. This is very dangerous.

Steering during sudden braking (when the ABS is working) will feel slightly different than it does when the brakes are not applied. Operate the steering wheel carefully keeping this in mind.

Driving in sand or mud, or on a muddy road may adversely affect the brakes and ABS sensors. Wash the vehicle to remove sand and mud after operating the vehicle in sandy or muddy conditions.

Before washing the vehicle, provide necessary protection to prevent water from being splashed on the ABS components (sensors and actuators). Especially when using high-pressure washing, be careful not

to allow water to be directly sprayed onto the ABS components or their harness connectors.

These are not signs of ABS malfunction:

- Soon after you start the engine, the sound of the valves working may be heard from the rear of the vehicle or underside of the cab. This sound is from a self-check by the ABS system and is normal.
- When ABS is properly operating, vibration is felt on the steering wheel and/or a mechanical operating sound is heard.
- ABS is more likely to activate when the brakes are applied during cornering or driving over a bump. This is because wheels that have gone over a bump would tend to lock due to loss of contact with the ground.
- ABS is not activated immediately after starting the vehicle. It is activated only when the vehicle speed reaches approx. 10 km/h (6 MPH). ABS operation is inactive when the vehicle speed reduces to approx. 5 km/h (3 MPH).

ABS Operation Indications and Signs

ABS

ABS warning light**Operation Indications of ABS**

When the engine control switch is placed into the "ON" position, the ABS warning light comes on and then goes out in approx. 3 seconds. The ABS is normal if the warning light goes out.

Operation Signs of ABS

When ABS is activated, slight vibration is transmitted to the brake pedal (hydraulic brake model) and steering wheel, and an operating sound can be heard from the ABS components.

If the ABS warning light does any of the following, the ABS may be faulty. Please contact the nearest dealer.

- If the ABS warning light comes on during driving

- The light does not come on when the engine control switch is placed into the "ON" position

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ 54.

Even if a problem has occurred with the ABS, the regular brakes will still work normally. However, ABS will not operate.

Precautions for Driving an ABS-Equipped Vehicle

ABS is not a device that enables driving and stopping under conditions exceeding safe driving limits. Always drive safely.

** Warning**

When braking suddenly, continue pressing brake pedal hard so that the ABS can take effect.

When braking suddenly, do not pump the brakes (pushing and releasing the brake pedal little by little). Pumping brakes will increase the braking distance.

The braking distance on slippery road surfaces is longer than that on a normal dry paved road even with an

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

ABS-equipped vehicle. When ABS is activated in the following road surface conditions, the braking distance may be slightly longer compared to that of vehicles not equipped with an ABS. Therefore, always be aware of the road and tire condition (tire type and wear condition), observe safe driving habits and drive the vehicle while keeping a safe following distance.

- When driving on a gravel road, or a road with a deep snow covering.
- When tire chains are used.
- When driving over road joints or bumps such as light reflectors on the road.
- When driving on a bumpy road, stone-paved road or track.
- When driving over an iron plate or manhole lid.

ABS does not work for wheel skid during a standing start, acceleration and cornering which do not involve braking. On a very slippery icy road, tires may

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

lose grip and steering wheel operation may not be able to control the vehicle's direction, resulting in very unstable driving. Always drive the vehicle observing a safe speed well matched with both road surface and tire conditions, and avoid sudden braking.

If powerful engine braking is applied on a very slippery icy road, the drive wheels may be locked (the ABS then does not work), resulting in loss of vehicle control.

When ABS is activated, a slight vibration (especially when the road surface is different between right and left wheels) and pulling may be felt on the brake pedal and steering wheel. In addition, an operating sound is produced from the ABS actuators. This does not indicate any abnormal condition. Stay calm and operate the steering wheel properly.

Electronic Braking force Distribution (EBD)

EBD is a function that uses the ABS to distribute braking force ideally between the front and rear wheels in order to

compensate for changes in load conditions or any shift of the load due to acceleration or deceleration, thus preventing premature locking of the rear wheels.

Warning

If a problem should occur with the EBD function, the ABS warning light and the brake system warning light will come on simultaneously.

The rear wheels will lock more easily if there is a problem with the EBD function. Have it checked and serviced at the nearest dealer as soon as possible. You and others could be seriously injured.

When the EBD operates, the brake pedal may push back slightly or you may hear a sound similar to that generated by the ABS when operational. Neither of them indicates any abnormal condition.

Parking Brake**Parking Brake Lever**

When parking or stopping your vehicle, engage the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not start moving. Avoid parking your vehicle on a slope as

much as possible and choose a level and flat place. If parking on a slope is unavoidable, be sure to set the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle does not move, and block the wheels with chocks for added safety.

Illumination of the parking brake warning light does not mean that the parking brake is fully applied. The parking brake lever must be fully engaged.

When you engage the parking brake lever, air pressure is reduced and all four wheel brakes are applied.

Warning

Although the parking brake indicator light will come on if the parking brake is engaged while the engine control switch is in the ON position, this does not mean the parking brake is fully engaged, so always make sure the lever is fully pulled up.

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake set as this will cause excessive wear, reduce parking brake effectiveness and increase fuel consumption.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Choose a flat place where stopping and parking are permitted and where the vehicle will not obstruct traffic.

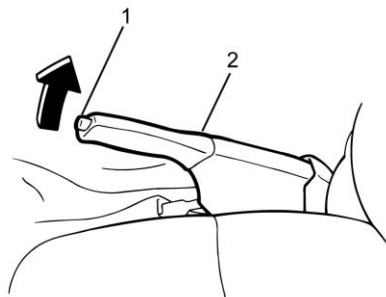
Remove all dirt from the vehicle's light lenses and reflectors to ensure that the vehicle can be seen from other vehicles. You and others could be seriously injured.

Avoid parking for long periods with cargo on the vehicle.

Warning

Do not use the parking brake while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. Applying the parking brake before the vehicle has stopped can cause the tires to lock or the vehicle to spin, possibly causing an accident. Unless the parking brake is fully released during driving, a fault and/or a fire may result.

If it was necessary to use the parking brake during driving, be sure to check afterwards to determine if any fault or failure has resulted.

Operation of Parking Brake**BRAKE**

The parking brake lever is located to the right of the driver's seat.

To set the parking brake, completely stop the vehicle. Then, without pressing the release button (1), hold the brake pedal down while pulling the parking brake lever (2) all the way up.

The parking brake indicator light in the instrument panel will come on when the lever is pulled up. Before you leave the driver's seat, follow the steps under "Parking, or Leaving Driver's Seat". See *Braking* ⇨ 103.

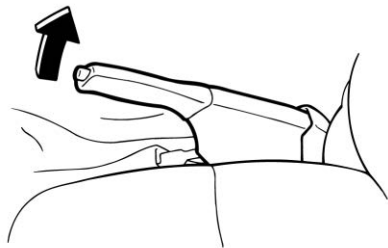
To release the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down while pushing the release button of the parking brake lever and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator light in the instrument panel will go out.

The parking brake indicator light is designed to remind you if the parking brake is not released when the engine control switch is on.

If the parking brake warning light remains on when the parking brake lever is lowered, a brake failure or a drop in air pressure may be the cause.

Check the brake air pressure for correct level. If the brake air pressure is low, contact your dealer for service.

If you notice the parking brake lever travel has increased over time, this means the cable adjustment must be checked by a qualified technician. Adjustment may be required due to parking brake shoe wear. See *Control of a Vehicle* ⇨ 100.

Inspection

Pull the parking brake lever slowly from the fully released position while counting the clicks produced as the lever engages ratchet plate notches to check that it can be raised the proper amount and the lever is held firmly.

If the number of notches is not within the standard value range below, adjust it to the standard value. Lever stroke is 6 to 8 notches.

Number of notches before parking brake is set when lever is pulled slowly from released position with pull force of about

147 N (15 kgf/33 lbs). See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218 and *Additional Maintenance and Care* ⇨ 232.

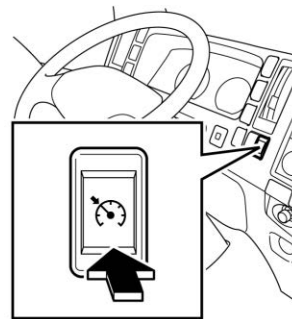
Cruise Control

The cruise control function allows you to drive the vehicle at a constant speed without operating the accelerator pedal. Use this function when the vehicle speed is above 48 km/h (30 mph). This function should only be used when driving without frequent starts and stops.

 Warning

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic. You and others could be seriously injured.

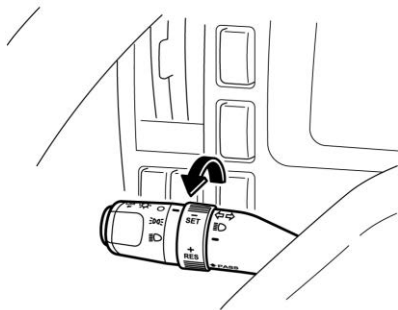
Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause needless wheel spinning, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads. You and others could be seriously injured.



1. Press the cruise control main switch to turn it on.



At this time, the cruise main indicator light comes on simultaneously.



2. Use the accelerator pedal to adjust the vehicle to the desired speed. Upon reaching the desired speed, turn the cruise control set switch. The vehicle speed at the moment you operate the switch is set in the system, enabling you to drive with the set speed automatically maintained without using the accelerator pedal.

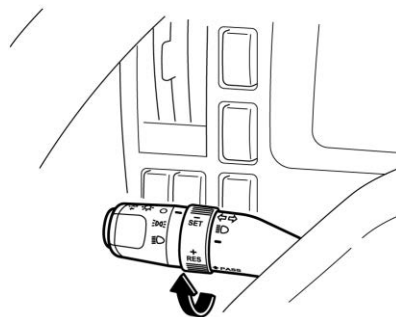


At the same time the cruise set indicator light comes on.

Accelerating during Cruise Control Driving

If you want to accelerate temporarily to pass another vehicle while driving using the cruise control, press the accelerator pedal. When you release the accelerator pedal, the speed returns to the original set vehicle speed.

When Increasing Vehicle Speed



When the cruise control resume switch is operated, the speed increases while the switch is held.

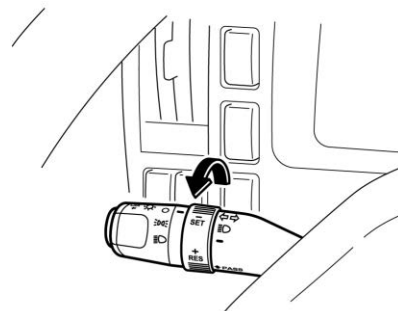
After the speed is increased to the desired vehicle speed, and the switch is released, the speed is set at the increased vehicle speed. If you want to increase the speed

quickly, press the accelerator pedal and accelerate to the desired vehicle speed. Then, operate the cruise control set switch.

When Increasing Vehicle Speed Slightly

If the cruise control resume switch is operated and released immediately, the set vehicle speed increases 1.6 km/h (1 mph) per operation. This operation can be performed 10 times consecutively.

When Decreasing Vehicle Speed



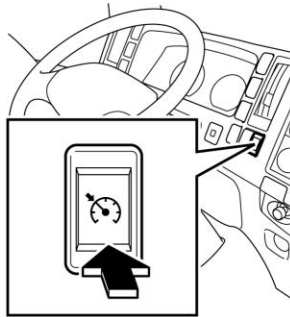
To decrease the speed after it is initially set, operate the cruise control set switch and hold it.

After the speed is decreased to the desired vehicle speed, and the switch is released, the speed is set at the decreased vehicle speed. If you want to decrease the speed quickly, press the brake pedal to cancel cruise control and decelerate to the desired vehicle speed. Then, operate the cruise control set switch.

When Decreasing Vehicle Speed Slightly

If the cruise control set switch is operated and released immediately, the set vehicle speed decreases 1.6 km/h (1 mph) per operation. This operation can be performed 10 times consecutively.

When Canceling Cruise Control



Press the cruise control main switch again to turn the cruise control system off. The cruise control main indicator light will go out.

The cruise control set speed is canceled in the following cases:

- When the brake pedal is pressed.
- When the selector lever is shifted to the N or "First" position.
- When cruising speed goes down to approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or lower.*
- When the vehicle speed decreases more than 20% below your set speed.
- When the cruise control main switch is turned off. *
- When the engine control switch is turned to the LOCK position. *
- When trouble develops in the system. *

* Memory speed is eliminated.

When you are not using cruise control, be sure to place the cruise control main switch into off.

When you place the engine control switch into ACC, place the cruise control main switch into off, then reset the cruise control if you want to use the cruise control again.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may want to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and do not use cruise control on steep hills.

When Returning to Cruise Control Driving

If you have canceled cruise control under the following conditions, you can return to the cruise control driving condition before cancellation when you operate and release the cruise control resume switch. The moment the resume switch is released, the cruise set indicator light comes on.

- When pressing the brake pedal.
- When the selector lever is shifted to the N position.

When the vehicle speed decreases to 40 km/h (25 mph) or less, it is not possible to return to the cruise control driving. You must reset the cruise control.

If the cruise control is turned back on while the vehicle speed exceeds what is set prior to the cancellation of cruise control, the set vehicle speed cannot be changed until the vehicle reaches to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed must be 1 mph below the previously set vehicle speed.

If you hold the switch at the +RES position, the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the switch or apply the brake. So unless you want to go faster, do not hold the switch at the +RES position.

Driver Assistance Systems

Speed Limiter

If equipped, speed limiting restricts the vehicle's speed by controlling the fuel injection volume. It prevents the speed from exceeding 105 km/h (65 mph) regardless of the pressure on the accelerator pedal.

Speed limiting does not control braking, so it is possible for the vehicle to exceed the set speed on downhill slopes. If the tire size is changed, the speed limiting may not work normally. Be sure to use the correct tire size specified for your vehicle.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 141.

Fuel

Top Tier Fuel

GM recommends the use of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline to keep the engine clean, reduce engine deposits, and maintain optimal vehicle performance. Look for the TOP TIER Logo or see www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline marketers and applicable countries.



Recommended Fuel



Regular unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating $(R+M)/2$ of 87 or greater is recommended. Do not use gasoline with a posted octane rating of less than 87, as this will result in reduced performance and driveability. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 87 or greater, the engine needs service.

Do not use any fuel labeled E85 or FlexFuel. Do not use gasoline with ethanol levels greater than 15% by volume.

Prohibited Fuels

Caution

Do not use fuels with any of the following conditions; doing so may damage the vehicle and void its warranty:

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- For vehicles that are not FlexFuel, fuel labeled greater than 15% ethanol by volume, such as mid-level ethanol blends (16–50% ethanol), E85, or FlexFuel.
- Fuel with any amount of methanol, methylal, ferrocene, and aniline. These fuels can corrode metal fuel system parts or damage plastic and rubber parts.
- Fuel containing metals such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT), which can damage the emissions control system and spark plugs.
- Fuel with a posted octane rating of less than the recommended fuel. Using this fuel will lower fuel economy and performance, and may decrease the life of the emissions catalyst.

Fuels in Foreign Countries**Foreign Operation**

If you plan on driving in another country outside the U.S. or Canada, unleaded fuel may be hard to find. Do not use leaded

gasoline. If you use even one tankful, your emission controls won't work well or at all. With continuous use, spark plugs can get fouled, the exhaust system can corrode, and your engine oil can deteriorate quickly. Your vehicle's oxygen sensor will be damaged. All of that means costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty.

To check on fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you'll be driving.

Fuel Additives

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is highly recommended for use with your vehicle. If your country does not have TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, add ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus–Gasoline to the vehicle's gasoline fuel tank at every oil change or 15 000 km (9,000 mi), whichever occurs first. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline and ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus–Gasoline will help keep your vehicle's engine fuel deposit free and performing optimally.

Filling the Tank

Be sure to obey the following instructions when refueling the vehicle:

- Stop the engine and close the vehicle's doors and windows.
- Keep cigarettes and other flames away from the vehicle.
- Before opening the fuel tank filler cap, touch a metallic object to discharge static electricity from your body.
- When filling, place the nozzle deeply into the fuel tank. If you try to fill more fuel by pulling out the nozzle from the fuel tank, the fuel may spill out, thus causing danger.
- Be sure to wipe off the fuel that is spilled at refueling.

** Warning**

Fuel vapor is highly flammable.

Be careful not to inhale fuel vapor when refueling the vehicle.

If you have a static charge buildup on your body while refueling the vehicle, a spark caused by its discharge could ignite the fuel, resulting in burns.

(Continued)

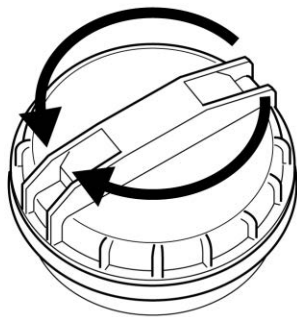
Warning (Continued)

All parts of the refueling procedure (from opening the fuel tank filler cap to completing the refueling and closing the fuel tank filler cap) must be performed by the same person.

Other people may be carrying static electricity. Do not allow them to approach the fuel filler.

The person performing the refueling procedure must not return to the seat in the cab part-way through the procedure. He/she could pick up another charge of static electricity by doing so.

Obey all cautions posted in filling stations.



Grip the tab of the fuel tank filler cap when turning the cap to open or close.

After refueling, make sure that the fuel tank filler cap is tightly closed.

Do not use any fuel tank filler cap that is not a genuine GM part.

The use of an improper fuel tank filler cap could cause fuel spillage in the event of a crash. The use of an improper fuel tank filler cap could also affect the fuel system and the emission control system.

Be sure to wipe off the fuel that is spilled at refueling.

⚠ Warning

Fuel may be under pressure. Be sure to slowly open the fuel tank filler cap. If you open it quickly, fuel may spurt out. You and others could be seriously injured.

Caution

Care must be taken when filling the fuel tank to prevent entry of dirt and water.

Conversions and Add-Ons**Add-On Electrical Equipment****Installing Electrical Equipment****⚠ Warning**

Inappropriate installation or removal of audio, radio or other electrical equipment can adversely affect other electrical equipment and cause a breakdown or fire. Be sure to have electrical equipment installed or removed by your dealer. You and others could be seriously injured.

Do not install any unauthorized radio set, or any radio set or antenna that does not comply with relevant standards. Noise from the radio set could cause electromagnetic interference with the vehicle's electronic equipment and other systems, resulting in a vehicle breakdown or in a malfunction of electronic equipment. Consult your dealer if you wish to install radio equipment.

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information	149
California Proposition 65 Warning	149
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements	149
Accessories and Modifications	149

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work	149
Cab Tilting	151
Engine Cover	152
Engine Oil	153
Automatic Transmission Fluid	155
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	157
Engine Coolant	158
Engine Overheating	162
Power Steering Fluid	164
Washer Fluid	165
Brakes	166
Brake Fluid	168
Battery - North America	169
Rear Axle (Gear Oil Viscosity Chart) ...	170
Rear Axle (Oil Level Check)	171
Noise Control System	171

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check	172
Wiper Blade Replacement	173

Headlamp Aiming

Front Headlamp Aiming	175
-----------------------------	-----

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement	176
Headlamps and Front Turn Signal	178
Roofmarker Lamps	181
Sidemarkers Lamps (Including Turn Signal and Cornering Lamps)	181
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps	184
License Plate Lamp	184
Interior Lamps	184

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload	184
----------------------------------	-----

Wheels and Tires

Wheels and Tires	191
Tire Pressure	201
Tire Rotation	201
Tire Chains	204
If a Tire Goes Flat	205

Jump Starting

Jump Starting - North America	205
-------------------------------------	-----

Towing the Vehicle

Towing the Vehicle	208
--------------------------	-----

Appearance Care

Exterior Care	210
Interior Care	214

General Information

Your authorized dealer has trained technicians and genuine parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see your authorized dealer.

California Proposition 65 Warning

Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, as well as many of its service parts and fluids, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

See *Battery - North America* ⇨ 169 and *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ 205 and the back cover.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Accessories and Modifications

Factory-Approved Accessories

Your dealer can furnish a wide range of comfort, convenience, and safety accessories, especially designed for you and your new truck. They can install all of the safety accessories you will need to comply with local, state and D.O.T. regulations and advise you how to comply with these regulations.

Be sure to ask your authorized dealer about the accessories.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

Precautions for Checking and Adjustments

Your authorized dealer has trained technicians and genuine parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see your authorized dealer.

Warning

To help avoid personal injury, take care when doing any maintenance or making any check or repair. Follow manufacturer's instructions for all materials used during service and maintenance of this vehicle. If used or handled improperly, they may be hazardous. Improper or incomplete service can also affect the vehicle and result in personal injury, or damage to the vehicle or its equipment. If you have any questions about carrying out some service, have the work done by a skilled technician.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

To prevent personal injury, keep hands, tools and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan when the engine is running.

The engine, exhaust pipe and radiator will be hot immediately after the vehicle is driven. Be careful around these parts to prevent burns. Perform all checks when the engine is cold.

Do not perform work near an open flame or other heat sources.

Do not let the engine run in poorly ventilated garages or sheds. This could cause carbon monoxide poisoning.

Performing maintenance work on a truck or chassis can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubts, contact your dealer.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Pull firmly on the parking brake lever and put the transmission in neutral. Move the selector lever to "P" and make sure the shift indicator displays "P".

Make sure to turn off the engine and remove the key from the engine control switch before performing any checks.

Select a place with a solid and level surface to perform the checking and maintenance work. Make sure to chock the wheels. It would be very dangerous if the vehicle started to move.

When performing work on the electrical system, be sure to remove the cable from the negative terminal on the battery.

Do not make engine adjustments yourself. Be sure to consult your dealer.

Use only appropriate tools.

Oils, brake fluid and engine coolant have lubrication, cooling and rust prevention functions. If these liquids deteriorate through loss or contamination, it will cause a decline in the performance of the parts and such problems as seizure or malfunctioning. Replenish or change these liquids when performing the checks (daily and periodic checks) as required by the relevant regulations or in accordance with

the Maintenance Schedule (when either the specified driving distance or period of time, whichever comes first, has expired).

Confirm that all systems and components are normal after performing the work.

Do not leave the removed parts or tools in the engine compartment. They could damage the equipment if caught in the belts or other moving components.

Dirty water, dirt and other impurities seriously impair the effectiveness of the oil, grease and fluids, and damage the parts. Exercise all due caution to prevent waste or other refuse from coming in contact with parts or materials that have been removed when changing or replenishing them.

Do not step on the engine or climb onto it. You could cause an engine failure by, for example, damaging the cylinder head cover or various connectors.

Electric Welding

Careless electric welding of vehicle parts can cause welding current to flow back through the vehicle's ground circuit and damage electrical and electronic parts so that they do not function normally. Whenever electric welding is necessary, consult your dealer.

Cab Tilting

Before Tilting the Cab (Single Cab Model)

Warning

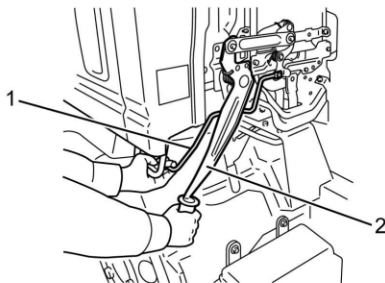
To help avoid personal injury and property damage:

- Park the vehicle on level ground and check that there is enough space in front of and above the cab.
- Set the parking brake firmly and block the front wheels.
- Move the selector lever in the "P" position.
- Secure loose articles in the cab.
- Stop the engine.
- Close the cab door.
- Keep the area surrounding the cab clear.

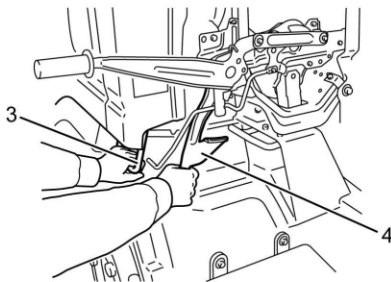
You and others could be seriously injured.

Tilting the Cab

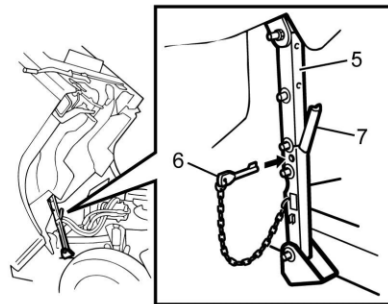
1. Check that all personnel are clear of the cab.
2. Read the label on the rear of the cab.



3. Unlock the handle (2) while pulling the lever (1).



4. Hold the assist handle (3) and pull the safety hook (4).



5. Raise the cab fully and be sure the cab support (5) is locked by the support lock lever (7).
6. Insert the safety lock pin (6).

Always be sure the safety lock pin is installed when the cab is tilted.

Warning

To help avoid personal injury or death, keep hands, tools, and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan when the engine is running.

You and others could be seriously injured.

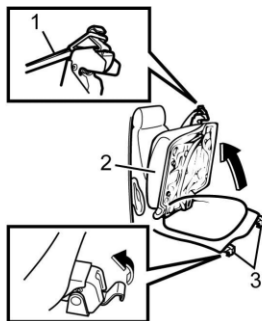
Lowering the Cab

1. Have all personnel stand clear of the cab.
2. Remove the safety lock pin (6).
3. Hold the assist handle (3) and unlock the cab support by pulling the support rearward while pressing the support lock lever (7).
4. Lower the cab and push the handle (2) down firmly to lock.
5. After operating the handle (2) pull the safety hood (4) and raise the assist handle (3) and make sure that the cab cannot be tilted up.
6. Place the engine control switch in the "ON" position and make sure that the cab tilt warning light is not displayed. See *Cab Tilt Warning Light* ⇨ 55.

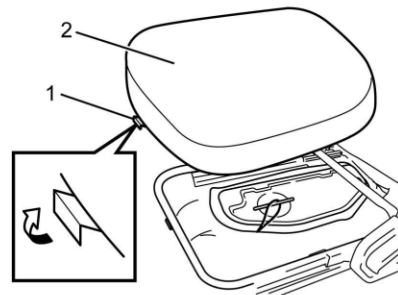
⚠ Warning

To help avoid personal injury or death, be sure the tilt cab is securely locked in the lowered position before operating the vehicle.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Engine Cover**Engine Inspection Cover (Crew Cab Model)**

To gain access to the engine, release the catch hooks (3) and raise the passenger's seat cushion (2). The cover can be held up by a strap (1), permitting engine inspection and adjustment.

Engine Inspection Sub Cover (Crew Cab Model)

To gain access to the engine compartment, pull the lock lever (red) (1) on the driver's seat cushion (2) to unlock it, raise the driver's seat cushion and remove the sub cover.

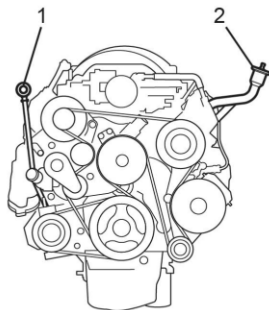
Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Dipstick Access

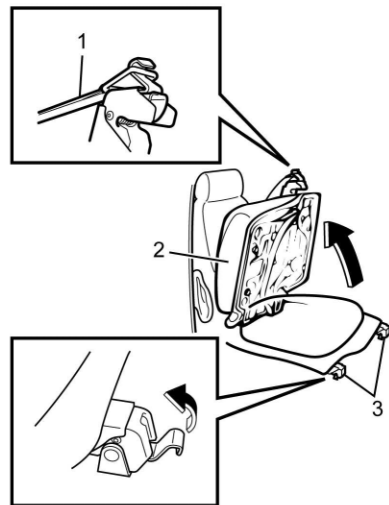
Single Cab Model



1. Engine Oil Dipstick
2. Oil Filler Cap

Access to the engine oil dipstick is located on the engine right side after tilting the cab.

Crew Cab Model



1. Strap
2. Seat Cushion
3. Catch Hooks

The engine oil dipstick is under the engine inspection sub cover located beneath the passenger's seat.

Checking Engine Oil

Check the engine oil level regularly, every 650 km (400 mi), especially prior to a long trip. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop.

Warning

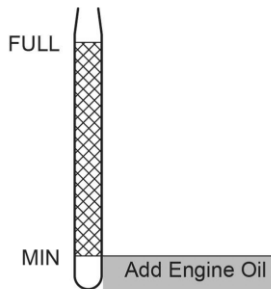
The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

Follow these guidelines:

- To get an accurate reading, park the vehicle on level ground. Check the engine oil level after the engine has been off for at least two hours. Checking the engine oil level on steep grades or too soon after engine shutoff can result in incorrect readings. Accuracy improves when checking a cold engine prior to starting. Remove the dipstick and check the level.
- If unable to wait two hours, the engine must be off for at least 15 minutes if the engine is warm, or at least 30 minutes if the engine is not warm. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it with a clean paper towel

or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" later in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 242.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If the oil level is above the operating range (i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range), the engine could be damaged. Drain the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle, and seek a service professional to remove the excess oil.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Any oil level above the "FULL" mark on the oil dipstick may cause engine malfunctions.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 234.

Specification

Use full synthetic engine oils that meet the dexos1 specification. Engine oils that have been approved by GM as meeting the dexos1 specification are marked with the dexos1 approved logo. See www.gmdexos.com.



Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

Use SAE 5W-30 viscosity grade engine oil.

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -29°C (-20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See "Specification" earlier in this section.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils meeting the dexos1 specification are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the

trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Warning

Overfilling of the automatic transmission can cause the fluid to be "PURGED" out of the breather hose onto the hot engine parts and can cause a fire.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Both quality and quantity of fluid are important factors that have a significant influence on the performance and durability of the automatic transmission. Be sure to use only the dealer recommended fluid for replenishment, and observe the specified fluid level.

Too much or too little transmission oil could damage your transmission. Too much could cause your transmission to overheat and fluid to spill out from the breather hose. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.

When cleaning around the dipstick and guide tube, make sure that you thoroughly wipe away all of the dirt and dust etc. Failure to do so may cause a fault in the transmission.

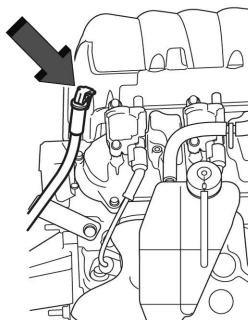
Do not let coolants (ethylene glycol type), water based substances, or other fluids etc., mix with the fluid. Otherwise, degraded performance and faulty operation of the system will result.

Checking the Automatic Transmission Oil level

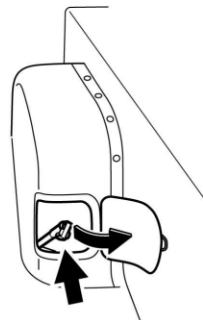
This operation could be difficult and you may choose to have this done at your dealer.

If you choose to do it yourself, then be sure to follow all the instructions below or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

Position of the Dipstick



For the single cab vehicle, the dipstick is located to the right side of the automatic transmission at the rear of the engine. Tilt the cab up to inspect it.



For the crew cab vehicle, the dipstick is located beneath the rear-of-engine inspection panel. After unlatching the A/T fluid inspection cover, the dipstick will be visible.

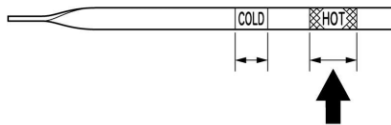
Inspection

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid if you have been driving at high speed for a long period of time, in city/heavy traffic or while pulling a trailer.

1. Start the engine, and drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes to warm up the engine. During 10 minutes, the automatic transmission fluid should reach a temperature of approximately

70 - 80 °C (158 - 176 °F). During the winter when temperatures are low, adjust the amount of driving time according to the actual conditions.

2. Park the vehicle on level ground, and firmly apply the parking brake.
3. With the engine idling, move the selector lever from the "P" position to the "I" position while pressing the brake pedal, and then return the lever from the "I" position to the "P" position.
4. With the engine still idling, pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth.



5. Reinsert the dipstick into position, pull out the dipstick slowly, and check whether the fluid level is within the

"HOT" marked range. Always check the fluid level at least twice. Consistently is important in maintaining accuracy. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather to ensure that it is clean and free of debris.

- Engine Dipstick COLD — Transmission fluid temperature Approx. 19 - 25 °C (66 - 77 °F).
 - Engine Dipstick HOT — Transmission fluid temperature Approx. 70 - 80 °C (158 - 176 °F).
 - The "COLD" range on the dipstick is a guide used by your dealer for specialized equipment used to replace or service the automatic transmission fluid. When performing your own inspections, always use the "HOT" range after warming up the vehicle.
6. If the fluid level is too low, add the specified fluid through the dipstick guide tube. Also, check whether there are no fluid leaks.
 7. Insert the dipstick securely into position.

Warning

Be extremely careful not to burn yourself when checking the oil level if the engine temperature is high. Protect yourself with gloves etc.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Discarded parts, oil, grease and fluids could have an adverse effect on the environment. It is difficult to dispose of these, so have your dealer handle all checks and replacements.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Air Cleaner

Use of clogged air cleaner element not only causes a deterioration in the engine output but also increased fuel consumption and dark exhaust smoke.

Be sure to use a genuine air cleaner element. If other air cleaner element is used, it may cause the sensor to output a wrong signal.

See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.

Engine Coolant

Protection of Engine against Overcooling

Overcooling of the engine not only accelerates wear of the vital engine parts but also hurts fuel economy.

Engine Coolant in Cold Weather

To prevent the engine damage due to freezing of the engine coolant, mix the coolant and water at the ratio of 50/50.

Replace rubber hoses whenever they crack or are damaged; even minor cracks allow engine coolant solution to leak.

Warning

If your engine cooling system overheats, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 162. Continued operation of the engine even for a short time may result in a fire and the possibility of personal injury and/or severe vehicle damage.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Your vehicle has an engine coolant recovery system, expansion bottle and/or an engine coolant reserve tank system. Engine coolant in the system expands with heat and

overflows into the reserve tank. When the system cools, engine coolant is drawn back into the radiator.

The engine cooling system has been filled at the factory with a quality engine coolant. It is important to use proper engine coolant to prevent damage to engine cooling system components. The engine cooling system is designed to use engine coolant rather than plain water. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 234.

See the Maintenance Schedule to find out when the engine coolant must be replaced. Note that changing the engine coolant is needed to replenish the rust inhibitors to make certain that all parts of the engine cooling system work well.

Warning

Check, replenish or change the engine coolant only after the engine has sufficiently cooled down.

Do not loosen or remove the cap of the radiator or engine coolant reserve tank cap when the engine coolant is still hot. Hot vapor or boiling water may burst out and cause a burn.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

When removing the radiator cap or engine coolant reserve tank cap, use a thick cloth to cover the cap and turn it slowly.

Engine coolant is toxic and must not be ingested. If the engine coolant is mistakenly ingested, seek prompt medical attention.

If the engine coolant gets in your eyes, rinse your eyes immediately with a large amount of water for 15 minutes or longer. Also, if your eyes are still irritated or otherwise feel abnormal, seek immediate medical attention.

If the engine coolant gets on your skin, rinse it off using a soap with a large amount of water. Also, if abnormality is seen, seek medical attention.

Engine coolant is flammable, and therefore, it must be kept away from flames and other heat sources. Engine coolant also could ignite if it comes in

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust manifold. Exercise caution to prevent this from happening.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Preparing Engine Coolant

To prevent the engine damage to freezing of the engine coolant and to protect the cooling system from corrosion, a mixture of the recommended type antifreeze and water. If the engine of the vehicle is at -30°C (-22°F) or above, the coolant concentration should be 50%. Direct use of "50/50 Pre-diluted" product which is already diluted to 50% concentration is recommended. If the outside temperature engine or vehicle is used at -30°C (-22°F) or below, coolant concentration of 55% is recommended.

It is the owner's responsibility to:

- Maintain the engine cooling system freeze protection at or above -30°C (-22°F) (at or below -30°C (-22°F) in colder climates to ensure protection against corrosion and loss of engine coolant from boiling. A 50/50 (55/45 for colder climates) mixture of the

recommended type antifreeze and water will provide freeze protection to at or above -30°C (-22°F), (at or below -30°C (-22°F) in colder climates) and boil protection to 128°C (262°F). Periodic replacement of engine coolant is needed to replenish the anticorrosion additives that wear out with use. Engine coolant has become dark in color shows that it needs to be changed.

- Use only the recommended coolant. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 234,
- Do not use methanol-base antifreeze, alcohol or plain water alone in your vehicle at any time. They will boil at a lower point than that at which the engine coolant temperature gauge will warn of overheating, and they do not provide proper protection against corrosion.

Engine Coolant Quantity

For the quantity of engine coolant, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 242. After changing the engine coolant, check that the engine coolant is up to the specified level.

⚠ Warning

For storage, close the cap of coolant container securely and keep it in a place inaccessible to children.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Using any coolant other than that recommended by your dealer could cause damage to the engine, radiator or heater core. In particular, use of coolants containing borate salts or silicates may result in engine or radiator corrosion, causing engine coolant leaks and other problems.

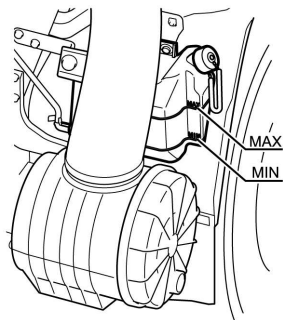
To dilute the coolant, use distilled water or deionized water.

Do not use the coolant at any coolant concentration other than that specified. If the coolant concentration is 60% or higher, overheating is likely to occur, while if it is 30% or lower, anti-corrosion function is not provided sufficiently.

Using coolant at any coolant concentration other than that specified may reduce anti-freezing performance, and engine coolant may freeze.

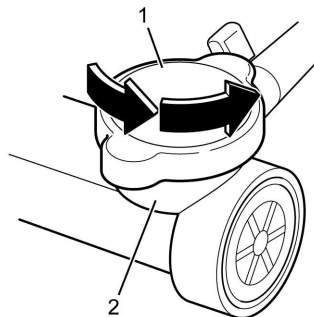
If the engine coolant decreases rapidly, go immediately to the nearest dealer for a check and repair.

Checking the Engine Coolant Level



For the single cab model, the engine coolant reserve tank is located behind the front-right wheel. See *Cab Tilting* ⇨ 151.

When the engine has cooled down, make sure that the fluid level in the engine coolant reserve tank is no lower than the “MIN” line. In addition, carefully remove the radiator cap and check to see if it is damaged. Check that the engine coolant is full to the filler neck. Check the engine coolant level only when it is cold.



The radiator cap (1) opens and closes in double action. When removing the radiator cap, take caution not to damage the cap and the filler neck (2).

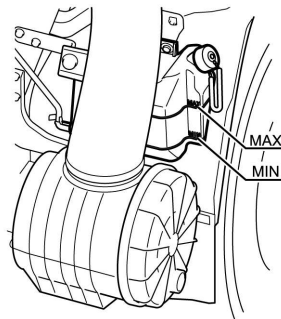
Turn the cap slowly to the left until it reaches a “stop”. Do not press down while turning the cap.

Wait until any remaining pressure (indicated by a hissing sound) is relieved, then press down on the cap and continue turning it to the left.

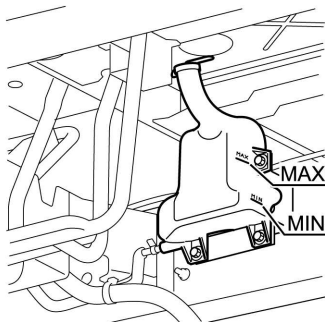
Also, check to make sure there are no leaks from the radiator or radiator hose. Check for fluid or stains on the ground showing leaks where the vehicle is parked. Contact your dealer if you discover leaks.

Using the vehicle when there are leaks can lead to engine seizure.

Adding Engine Coolant

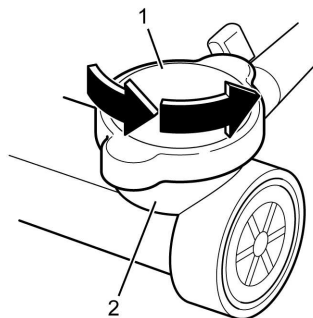


Single Cab Model



Crew Cab Model

When the engine coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is below the “MIN” line, open the reserve tank cap and fill to near the “MAX” line with engine coolant. Wash the reserve tank cap and filler neck with clean water. Tighten the cap securely after the engine coolant has been replenished.



1. When the engine is cool, remove the radiator cap (1).
 - Turn the cap slowly to the left until it reaches a “stop”. Do not press down while turning the cap.
 - Wait until any remaining pressure (indicated by a hissing sound) is relieved, then press down on the cap and continue turning it to the left.
2. Fill the radiator to the base of the filler neck (2).
 - Add enough engine coolant to provide the required cooling, freezing and corrosion protection.
 - Install the radiator cap.

3. Run the engine until the engine coolant temperature rises to normal level, and idle the engine for 10 minutes.
4. Turn off the engine. Make sure that the engine is cool. Remove the radiator cap and add engine coolant to the radiator until it reaches the base of the filler neck.
5. Install the radiator cap.

Check, replenish or change the engine coolant only after the engine has sufficiently cooled down.

When the engine is still hot, take care to prevent engine coolant from contact with the exhaust manifold. Any such contact could result in exhaust manifold damage.

If you use the proper quality engine coolant, there is no need to add extra inhibitors or additives which claim to improve the system. They may be harmful to the proper operation of the system.

Do not overfill the engine coolant reserve tank.

If the level of engine coolant changes rapidly, have your vehicle inspected at your dealer.

Thermostat

The engine coolant temperature is controlled by thermostat(s). The thermostats stop engine coolant flow through the radiator until a preset temperature is reached. The thermostats are installed in the engine coolant outlet on the engine block. The same thermostats are used in both winter and summer. When a replacement is needed, genuine GM parts are recommended.

Radiator Pressure Cap

The radiator cap, a 103 kPa (15 psi) pressure type, must be installed tightly, otherwise engine coolant may be lost and damage to the engine may result from overheating. The radiator pressure cap should be checked periodically for proper operation. If a replacement is required, a genuine GM part is recommended.

Engine Overheating

When the Engine Overheats

The engine cooling system may overheat if the engine coolant level is too low, if there is a sudden loss of engine coolant (such as

radiator hose failure), or if other problems occur. It may also temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions such as:

- Climbing a long hill on a hot day.
- Stopping after high-speed driving.
- Idling for long periods in traffic.

If engine power drops and the needle on the engine coolant temperature gauge goes up above the upper limit of the safety zone and enters the "H" zone, the engine is overheating. The engine overheat warning light will come on. Either steam or boiling engine coolant will squirt out of the radiator. Take the following corrective actions immediately.

Warning

To help avoid being burned:

Do not tilt the cab or open the engine access cover if you see or hear steam or engine coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or engine coolant can be seen or heard before tilting the cab or opening the engine cover.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not remove the radiator cap or engine coolant reserve tank cap if the engine coolant in the tank is boiling. Also do not remove the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure if either cap is taken off too soon.

You and others could be seriously injured.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

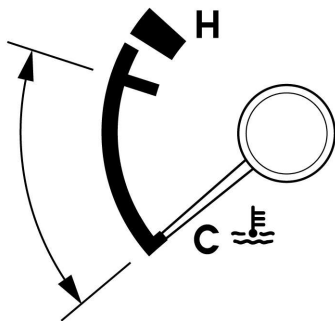
Warning

If the engine coolant temperature gauge shows an overheat condition or you have other reasons to suspect the engine may be overheating, continued operation of the engine (other than as described here) even for a short period of time may cause a fire and the result in personal injury and severe vehicle damage. Take immediate action as outlined.

You and others could be seriously injured.

If you see or hear escaping steam or have any other reason to suspect there is a serious overheat condition, stop and park the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, turn on the hazard warning flasher and then turn off the engine immediately and safely exit the vehicle.

If Steam Is Not Coming from the Engine Compartment



If the engine coolant temperature gauge shows an overheat condition, or you have reason to suspect the engine may be overheating, take the following steps:

1. Operate the hazard warning flasher and pull the vehicle immediately over to a safe place that does not impede traffic and park it.
2. If there's no sign of steam, push the accelerator pedal until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed. Bring the engine speed back to normal idle after 2 or 3 minutes. Idle the engine and wait until the engine coolant temperature drops to safety zone. If your air conditioner is on, turn it off. Turn on the heater to help the engine expel heat.
3. When the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge returns to the middle of the safety zone, stop the engine. If the needle of engine coolant temperature gauge does not drop inside into the safety zone, turn the engine off and have your vehicle serviced at the nearest dealer.

When the cooling fan for the radiator is not turning, turn off the engine immediately.

Warning

Even when the engine has been stopped, the engine coolant in the radiator remains under pressure. Immediately removing the radiator cap could cause steam or hot water to blow out, and you could be scalded as a result. The engine coolant in the reserve tank may also be hot. Immediately removing the cap could cause hot water to blow out, and possibly scald you. Perform inspection, refilling, and replacement of coolant only when its temperature has cooled.

When removing the radiator cap and reserve tank cap, use a thick cloth to cover the cap and turn it little by little.

You and others could be seriously injured.

4. If no steam or engine coolant can be seen or heard from the engine compartment:
 - Tilt the cab or open the engine access cover.
 - If the engine coolant is boiling, wait until it stops before proceeding.

- Look at the see-through reserve tank. The engine coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the reserve tank.
 - If necessary, pour engine coolant (See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 158 for the proper coolant and water mixture) into the reserve tank only, not directly into the radiator. Also, do not check engine coolant level at the radiator.
 - Make sure the fan belts are not broken, or off the pulleys, and that the fan turns when the engine is started. Make sure the fan blade and pulleys are not broken.
 - If the engine coolant level in the reserve tank is low, look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator, and water pump.
- If the engine coolant level in the reserve tank is at the correct level but there is still an indication on the instrument panel of an overheat condition:

You must let the engine cool first. You may then add engine coolant directly to the radiator. See "Adding Engine Coolant" under *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 158.

5. Inspect to see if there is any dirt, etc. attached to the front surface of the radiator. Also, inspect to see if there is anything blocking the core. If there is anything attached, clean and remove it.
6. After the inspection, regardless of the vehicle condition, please contact the nearest dealer.

Once the engine coolant temperature gauge no longer signals an overheat condition, you can resume driving at a reduced speed. Return to normal driving after about 10 minutes if the gauge pointer does not again show an overheat condition.

When tap water only has been used for engine coolant in an emergency, change the engine coolant as soon as possible.

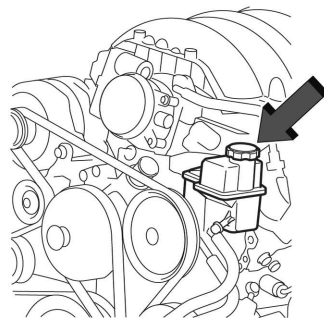
Engine damage may be caused if an overheating engine is suddenly refilled with water. Instead, refill slowly.

Power Steering Fluid

The power steering fluid level must be checked and it must be changed according to the Maintenance Schedule. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.

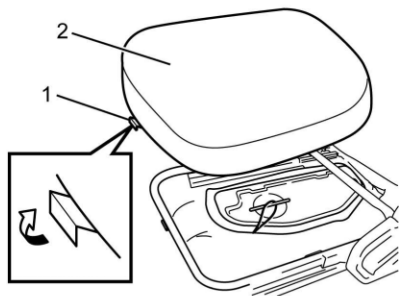
When replenishing power steering fluid or flushing the power steering system, always use ATF (Dexron®-VI). Failure to use the proper fluid may damage the power steering system seals and hoses, leading to fluid leakage.

Checking the Power Steering Fluid Level



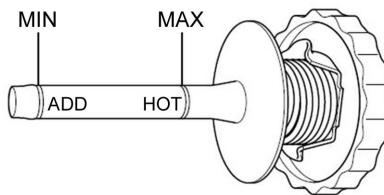
For single cab vehicles, the fluid level is correct if it is between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the oil dipstick. If the level is lower than the "MIN" line, add fluid up to the "MAX" line.

The reserve tank is located at the front left side of the engine.



For crew cab vehicles, open inspection sub cover, by pulling the lock lever (red) (1) on the driver's seat cushion (2) to unlock it, raise the cushion and remove the sub cover. See *Engine Cover* ⇨ 152.

When you have finished checking the fluid level, securely install the cap.



The fluid level is correct if it is between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the oil dipstick. If the level is lower than the "MIN" line, add fluid up to the "MAX" line.

Warning

Before adding fluid, clean the area around the cap and pour fluid from a clean jug or filler. Foreign matter getting in the tank may cause power steering system failure.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not mix the recommended power steering fluid with fluids of other brands. Due to chemical reactions, any mixture of differently branded fluids may cause failure of the system.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Washer Fluid

Windshield Washer Fluid

The windshield washer is equipped on the windshield wiper arm.

Check the level of fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank. In addition, spray windshield washer fluid and operate the windshield wipers to check for any areas not properly wiped. At this time, also check the spraying condition of the windshield washer.

Inspect the washer fluid level regularly, especially during bad weather conditions.

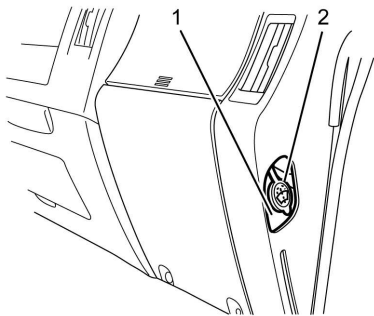
Use a high quality premixed solvent available at most dealers or service stations.

Avoid hard water when mixing windshield washer solvents. Hard water contaminants may plug orifices in the washer system and reduce performance.

Do not use radiator antifreeze in the windshield washer; it could cause cab paint damage.

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defrosters before using the washer, to help prevent icing that may block the driver's vision.

Refilling Windshield Washer Fluid



1. The windshield washer fluid tank (1) is located under the instrument panel on the passenger side.

2. Open the cap (2) and fill the tank with windshield washer fluid.

Upon factory shipment, new vehicles contain only tap water in the washer fluid tank. Adjust the concentration of the fluid to suit your own usage.

Follow the instructions provided with the windshield washer fluid regarding the ratio for mixing with tap water.

Poor quality products, engine coolant, and soapy water must not be used. Failure to observe this precaution can result in nozzle blockage or damage to painted surfaces.

The washer should never be used while the tank is empty. Operating the washer with the tank empty can result in motor damage.

Brakes

For the most effective braking and for maximum life from brake system components, follow these suggestions:

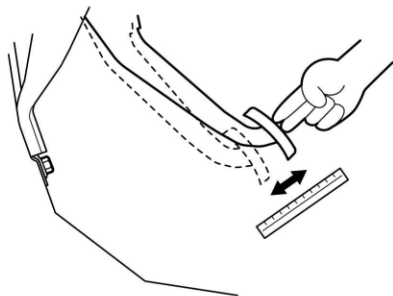
- Keep any obstructions from interfering with brake pedal travel.
- Keep tires properly inflated. Improperly inflated tires can reduce the efficiency of the brakes.

Follow the recommendations for brake checks in the Maintenance Schedule.

GM replacement brake lining material is recommended for this vehicle to maintain the balance between front and rear brake performance. GM replacement brake parts have been carefully selected to provide the proper brake balance for purposes of both stopping distance and controllability over the full range of operating conditions. Installation of front or rear brake lining material with performance different from that of the replacement parts recommended for this vehicle can change the intended brake balance of this vehicle.

Brake Pedal

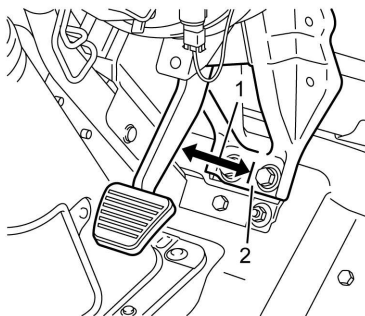
Stroke



Shut off the engine and press the brake pedal about 10 times strongly, then check the brake pedal for free play by lightly pushing it by hand until you feel resistance.

Free play (measured at the tip of pedal)

4 - 7 mm (0.16 - 0.28 in)



1. Clearance from the floor.
2. Brake pedal bracket.

Next, start the engine, and wait at least 1 minute. Then press the brake pedal and measure the clearance (1) of the pedal from the floor (that is, the distance between the brake pedal bracket (2) and the brake pedal arm).

Clearance between the brake pedal and the brake pedal bracket with a pressure of 490 N (110 lbs) applied to the brake pedal

45 mm (1.77 in) or more

Clearance between the brake pedal and the brake pedal bracket with a pressure of 294 N (66 lbs) applied to the brake pedal

45 mm (1.77 in) or more

If, after continued pressing of the brake pedal, the clearance slowly decreases or the pedal action feels spongy, air may be trapped in the brake hydraulic circuit. Have your vehicle inspected at the nearest dealer as soon as possible.

If your vehicle's brakes squeak during normal driving or braking, the cause may be one of the following.

- Brake pad wear
Brake pads are about to wear out. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected at the nearest dealer as soon as possible.
- Adherence of sand, grit or mud
If sand, grit or mud adheres to the brakes, a screeching sound may be emitted upon contact with rotating components. If this happens, wash the vehicle to remove all such adhering matter. If cleaning alone does not eliminate the squeaking sound, have your vehicle inspected at the nearest dealer.

Brake Hoses and Pipes

Inspection

With the steering wheel turned fully to the left, check the left front brake hose and pipe visually and by touch, making sure that they are free of scratches, cracks and bulging. Also make sure that the hose and pipe do not interfere with any chassis part or wheel, and that their joints are not leaking and are free of any type of damage. Check the right front brake hose and pipe in the same way. The rear left and right brake hoses and pipes should also be checked in the same manner.

Disc Brakes and Drum Brakes

If the brake pads and shoe linings wear out beyond their usable limit, not only will the brake performance be impaired, but brake components could also fail.

Warning

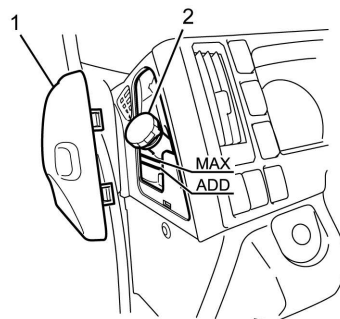
Do not drive with brake pads and shoe linings worn out beyond the limit. Excessively worn brake pads and shoe linings may cause breakdown of brake components and poor braking performance. You and others could be seriously injured.

Caution

The pad has an embedded wear indicator. A squeaking noise from the indicator means that the pad is approaching the usable limit. If the squeaking noise from the indicator can be heard, contact the nearest dealer for inspection or replacement.

Brake Fluid

Checking the Brake Fluid Level



Remove the inspection cover (1) on the left-hand side of the instrument panel by turning it with your fingers. Check that the fluid level in the reservoir is between the "MAX" and "ADD" lines.

If the fluid surface cannot easily be seen, rock the vehicle gently.

Adding Brake Fluid

If the level of brake fluid has dropped below the "ADD" line, remove the cap (2) and add fluid. Take care to avoid filling beyond the "MAX" line.

Tighten the cap securely after the fluid has been added.

When adding brake fluid to the tank, take care to prevent dirt and water from entering it. Any dirt or water in the system could cause the vehicle to lose braking functions.

Inspect and change brake fluid according to the Maintenance Schedule.

Use the recommended brake fluid when adding brake fluid.

Never mix the specified brake fluid with fluids of another brand.

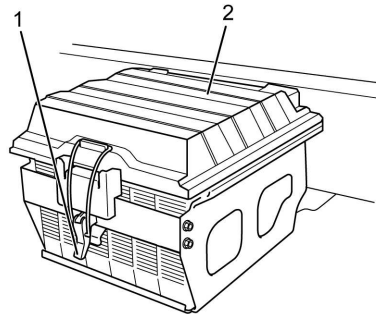
Be careful not to spill brake fluid onto painted surfaces or to let it come in contact with skin. If fluid is spilled onto a painted surface or comes in contact with skin, wash away the fluid with water and immediately wipe the area clean.

Brake fluid readily absorbs moisture. Therefore, it is necessary to close the brake fluid container tightly for storage.

If the brake fluid level decreases rapidly, there may be a problem in the brake system or brake pads or shoe linings may have worn out. Have your vehicle inspected by the nearest dealer immediately.

Battery - North America

Working Near Battery



The batteries are located on the outboard side of the left frame rail, behind the cab. The batteries are in a carrier with the cover (2) retained by spring clips (1).

Danger

Follow the precautions listed in the jump starting Danger (see "When the Battery is Discharged") when working on or near the battery. Personal injury (particularly to eyes) or property damage may result

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

from battery explosion, battery fluid or electrical (short circuit) burns. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

If the negative cable is disconnected from the negative terminal on the battery within 3 minutes after turning the engine control switch to the "LOCK" position, the engine control module may malfunction.

Checking the Battery

Your new vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. They need no periodic electrolyte level maintenance. The top of the battery is permanently sealed (except for a small vent hole) and has no filler caps. You will never have to add water. Remember to check and recharge the battery as necessary, and keep the connection clean.

If the vehicle is not going to be driven for 30 days or longer, disconnect the ground cable from the negative (-) terminal of the battery to prevent discharge.

For full power needs at replacement time, a battery with the same specifications, as shown on the original battery label, is recommended.

Warning

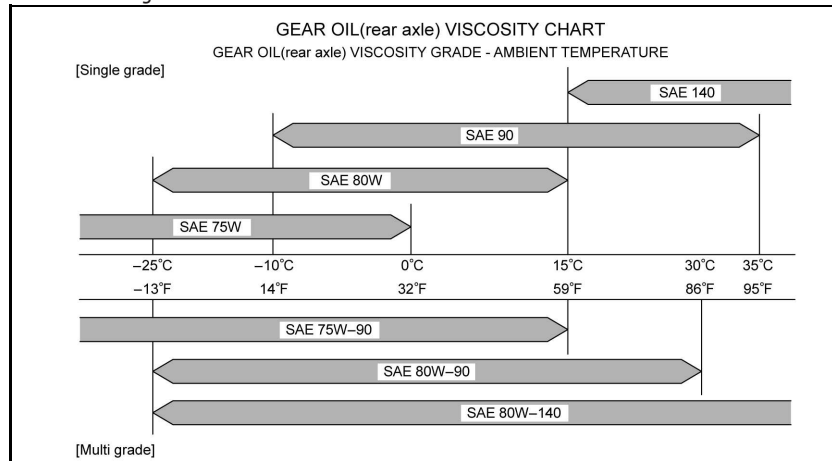
WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.** For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

See *California Proposition 65 Warning* ⇨ 149 and the back cover.

Rear Axle (Gear Oil Viscosity Chart)

Gear Oil Viscosity Chart

Select appropriate gear oil in accordance with the table below. It is important to select the viscosity appropriate for the temperature at which your vehicle operates. Use the following table for making correct selections.



Rear Axle (Oil Level Check)

Rear Axle Differential Gear Oil

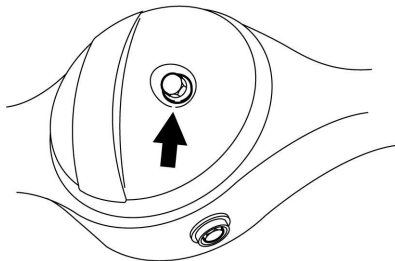
The rear axle differential gear oil level must be checked for its level and it must be changed according to the Maintenance Schedule.

Use the oil quantities indicated later in this section only as guidelines when changing the rear axle differential gear oil.

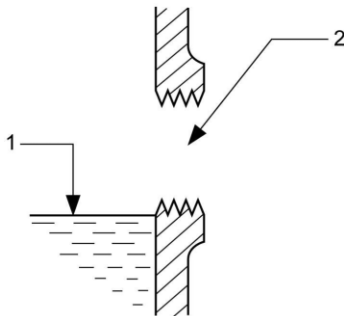
After changing the oil, ensure that it is at the correct level.

Drained oil must be disposed of in a method conforming to the regulatory requirements in your state.

Checking the Oil Level



1. Remove the oil level plug.



2. Check that the oil level (1) is up to the lower edge of the oil level plug hole (2). If the oil level is too low, add oil through the oil level plug hole.
3. Fasten the oil level plug to the specified torque. Plug tightening torque is 78.4 Nm (8.0 kgfm/57.8 lb ft).

Any dirt on the plug should be wiped off before installing it.

Noise Control System

The following information relates to compliance with federal noise emission standards for vehicles with a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of more than 4 536 kg (10,000 lb). The maintenance schedule provides information on maintaining the noise control system to minimize degradation of the noise emission control system during the life of your vehicle. The noise control system warranty is set forth in your Warranty and Owner Information book.

These standards apply only to vehicles sold in the United States.

Tampering with Noise Control System Prohibited

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof:

1. The removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control, prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use; or
2. The use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below.

Insulation:

Removal of the noise shields or any undercab insulation.

Engine:

Removal or rendering engine speed governor, if so equipped, inoperative so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

Fan and Drive:

- Removal of fan clutch or rendering clutch inoperative.
- Removal of the fan shroud.

Air Intake:

- Removal of air cleaner silencer.
- Reversing air cleaner cover.

Exhaust:

- Removal of muffler, catalytic converter, and/or resonator.
- Removal of exhaust pipes and exhaust pipe clamps.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

When the Selector Lever Cannot be Moved From the "P" Position

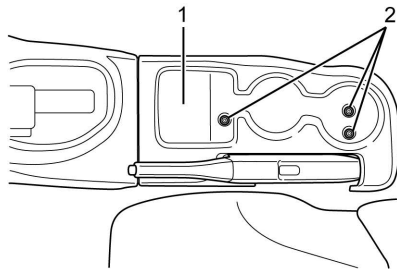
If the selector lever cannot be moved from "P" Park position to other positions after performing the instructions given in the ADVICE section in "If You Cannot Move the Selector Lever from the 'P' Position" a number of times, it is likely that the shift lock function is faulty. Immediately contact the nearest dealer for inspection. Only in the event of an emergency, carry out the procedure below.

Caution

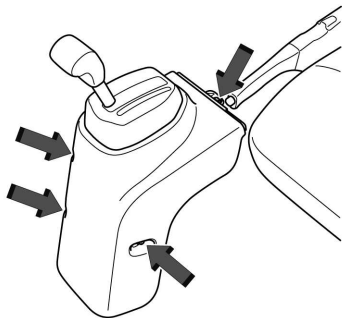
When the selector cannot be operated from the P position to any other position even after performing the operation below repeatedly, the shift lock system may have a failure. Have the vehicle inspected at your dealer.

When performing the below operations, make sure the parking brake is securely engaged.

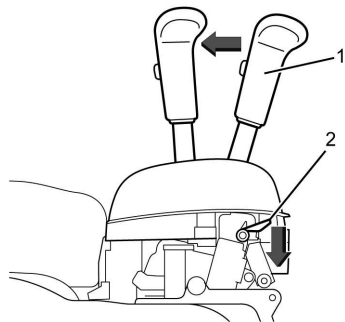
1. Securely pull the parking brake lever. Make sure to shut down the engine and block the wheels with chocks.



2. Remove the cup holder (1) by removing the three Torx bolts (2).



3. Remove the selector lever cover by removing the four screws and lifting it up.



4. Move the selector lever (1) to the “N” while pressing the release lever (2).

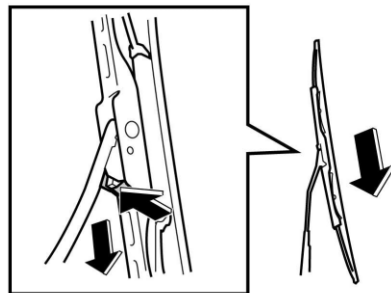
When reinstalling the selector lever cover and cup holder, perform the procedure above in reverse order. In that case, tighten the Torx bolts to 4 N•m (35 lb in).

Wiper Blade Replacement

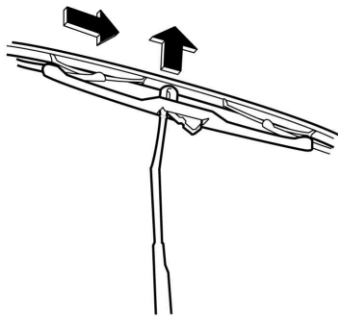
Caution

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windshield.

Removal

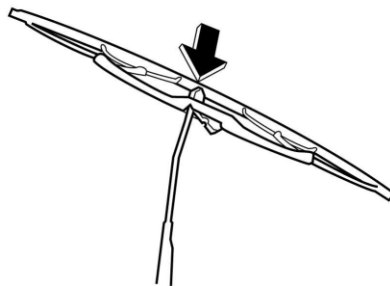


1. Pull the wiper arm up to the vertical position.
2. While pressing the wiper-blade hook toward the arm, slide the blade downward toward the base of the arm.



3. With the blade and arm almost perpendicular, remove the blade from the arm.

Installation



1. Insert the blade while holding it almost perpendicular to the arm.

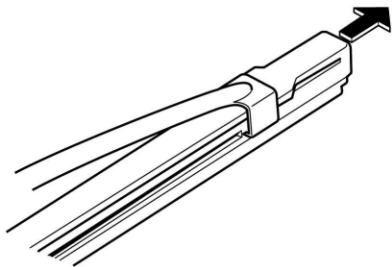


2. With the blade and arm oriented in the same direction, push up the blade until it locks into place on the arm.

Whenever a wiper blade has been attached, ensure that it is locked into place. Failure to observe this precaution can result in the wiper blade becoming dislocated when the windshield wiper switch is turned on.

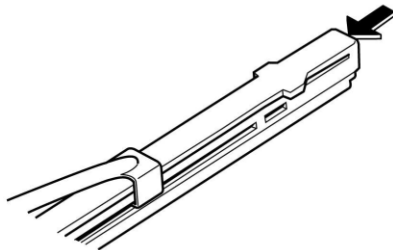
Replacement of Wiper Rubber Insert

Removal

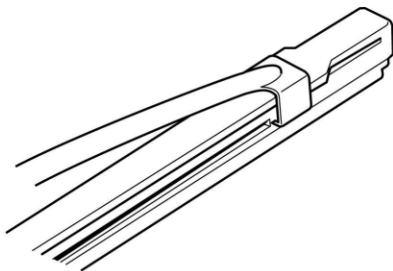


1. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
2. Pull the wiper rubber insert in the direction indicated by the arrow and extract it from the wiper blade.

Installation



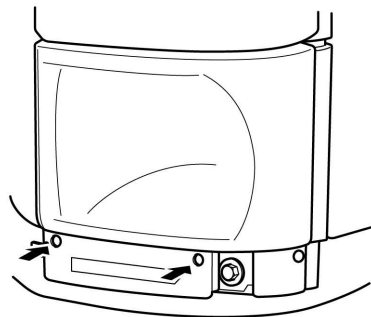
1. Insert a new wiper rubber insert into the wiper blade.



2. Continue pushing in the wiper rubber insert until the wiper blade's hook engages with the hole in it, and then confirm that the rubber insert is securely held in place.
3. Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm.

Headlamp Aiming

Front Headlamp Aiming



For vertical aiming, turn the two screws indicated by arrows in the diagram.

1. Remove the rubber beneath the headlight.

- Two screws should be turned in the same direction at the same time to adjust aiming.
- When the headlamp aiming is out of position, contact your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

Bulbs

- Check each bulb for blowout.
- If a bulb has blown out, replace it. Always place the engine control switch in the "LOCK" position and place all the other switches in the "OFF" position before replacing the blown bulbs.
- If you need assistance replacing any bulbs, contact your dealer.

Turn Signals

The flasher unit activates both the turn signal circuits and the hazard circuit. Should a lamp burn out, the flasher unit will continue to operate. Check the turn signal lamps visually before the vehicle is used.

Bulb Wattage



Warning

Using bulbs with a wattage other than that specified could cause the bulb or the wiring to become hot. This could result in the warping of the lens and case, and it could also lead to the outbreak of fire.

Bulbs are hot immediately after they go out. When replacing the bulbs, avoid being burned by making sure they are fully cooled.

Never drive the vehicle with the bulbs not working. This could result in an accident.

You and others could be seriously injured.

When one bulb of a pair of lamps, such as a headlamp blows out, the other bulb is approaching the end of its useful life. We recommend that both be changed at the same time.

For the lamps (lighting equipment) such as headlamps, inside of the lens can mist up momentarily when driving in the rain or during the car wash. Also, the temperature difference between inside and outside of the lamps can sometimes cause the water condensation inside the lens. This is not abnormal because this is the same phenomenon as the windshield or door glass fogs up when it rains. If the mist goes away minutes after the lamp is turned on, things are normal.

Bulb Wattage

Position	Lights	Bulb Wattage (12V)	Qty.
Front	Headlight Highbeam/Lowbeam	60/55W	2
	Front Turn Signal Lamp	27W (Amber)	2
	Parking Lamp	5W	2
	Cornering Lamp	27W	2
	Side Turn Signal Lamp	5W (Amber)	2
	Sidemarkers Lamp	5W (Amber)	2
Rear	Taillamp and Stoplamp	8/27W	2
	Turn Signal Lamp	27W	2
	Back-Up Lamp	27W	2
	License Plate Lamp	7.5W	1
Roof	Roofmarker Lamp (Identification/Clearance Lamp)	5W	5
Interior	Dome Light	10W	1
	Speedometer and Gauge Lights	3.4W	5
	Warning/Indicator Lights	LED	20

Contact your dealer when replacing lights that are not listed here.

Headlamps and Front Turn Signal

Replacing the Headlamps

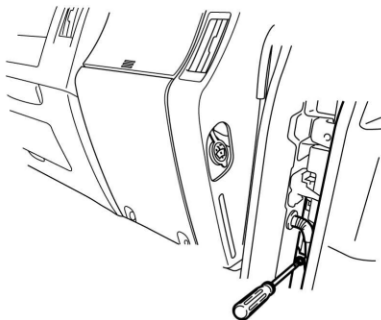
When the bulb has blown out, replace it with a bulb of the specified wattage. Be careful not to excessively tighten the mounting screws when replacing the headlamp bulbs.

Do not replace a bulb with other than the specified wattage.

Proper aiming of the headlamps is important to ensure sufficient illumination of the highway without blinding other motorists. When replacing headlamp bulbs, have the headlamp aim adjusted at your dealer.

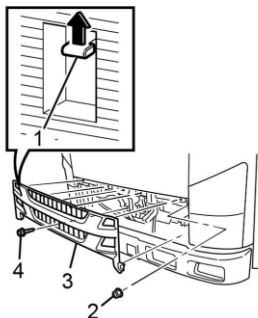
When replacing a bulb, make sure the light switch is "OFF".

See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ 176.



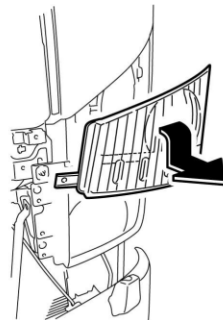
1. Remove the turn signal lamp.

Open the front door. Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove the two screws between the door and the cab.

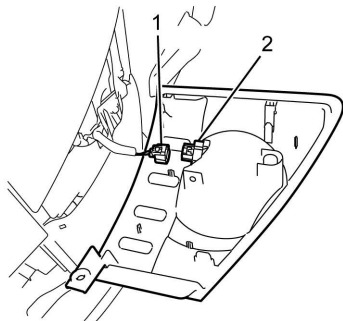


2. Remove the front grille (3).

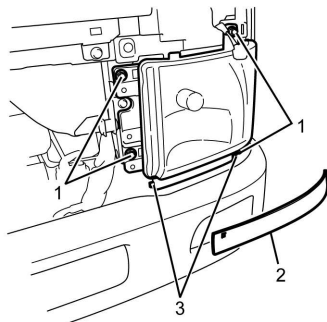
Remove the screw (4) from the center of the grille. Push up on the tabs of the five clips (1) on the upper side of the grille and pull the grille toward you to remove it. Loosen the nuts (2) for the turn signal light.



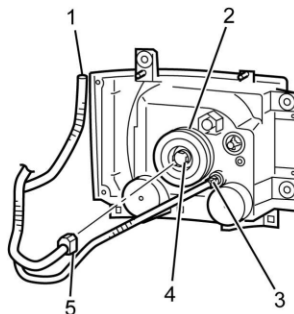
3. Tilt the turn signal lamp unit down toward the front of the vehicle and remove it.



4. Disconnect the connector (1) for the turn signal lamp from the socket (2) and then remove the lamp.

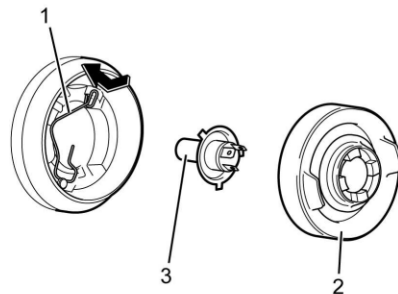


5. Disengage the rubber seals (2) from the two projections (3) at the bottom of the headlamp. Remove the four bolts (1).

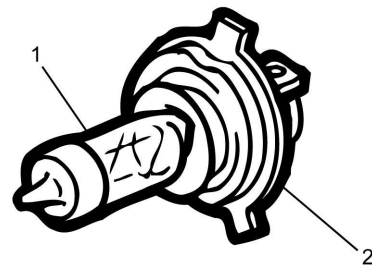


6. Disconnect the headlamp connector (5) and the parking lamp socket (3). Remove the headlamp assembly.

When removing the headlamp connector, pull out the connector while holding the center portion of the rubber boot. Otherwise, the headlamp bulb will be broken.



7. Remove the rubber boot (2). Push the right side of the clip (1) that holds the bulb (3) in place and slide it upwards to disengage the clip.



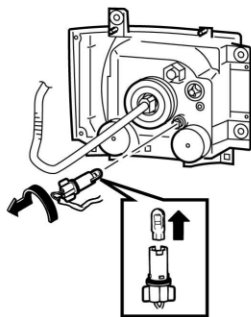
8. Remove the bulb (1) from the socket (2) and replace with a new one.
9. After replacing the bulb, reverse steps 1-8 to install.

Do not touch the glass of the bulb with your hand. Soiling the glass will cause the bulb to blow out.

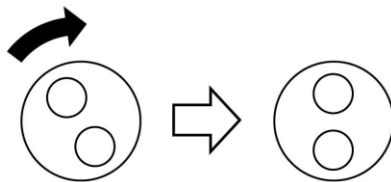
When attaching the rubber boot, press in both the outside and inside circumference of it. Make sure that the rubber boot, the headlamp assembly, and the bulb are securely installed without any raised section. If the rubber boot is not firmly in place, water could get inside the headlamp and lead to a breakdown.

Replacing Parking Lamps

1. Refer to “Replacing the Headlamps” and remove the headlamp assembly.



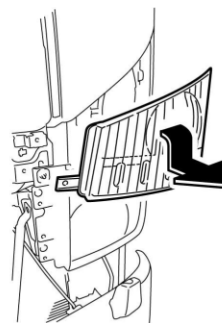
2. Pull the bulb out from the parking lamp socket and replace with a new one.



3. To install the lamps, perform the same sequence of operations in reverse, taking care to turn the connector clockwise to lock it securely.

If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the lamp and lead to a breakdown.

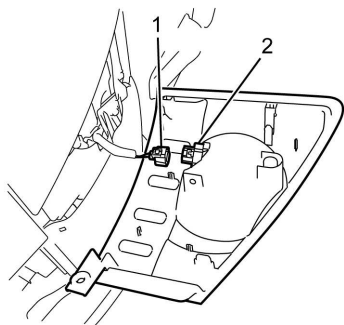
Replacing a Front Turn Signal Lamp



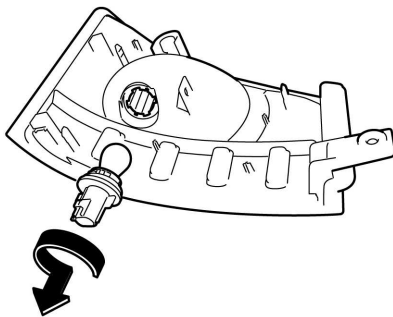
Do not replace a bulb with other than the specified wattage. This will cause abnormal flashing, particularly for turn signal lamps.

When replacing a bulb, make sure the light switch is OFF.

1. While referring to “Replacing the Headlights”, tilt the turn signal lamp assembly down toward the front of the vehicle and remove it.



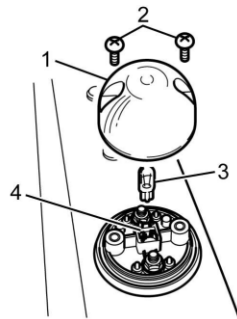
2. Disconnect the connector for the turn signal light and then remove the socket.



3. Pull the bulb from the socket and replace it with a new one.
4. To install the lamps, perform the same sequence of operations in reverse, taking care to turn the connector clockwise to lock it securely.

If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a breakdown.

Roofmarker Lamps



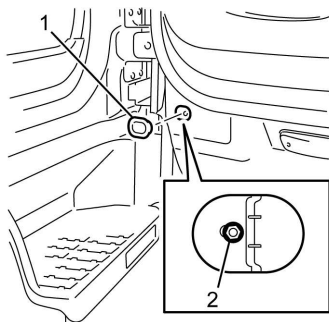
1. Loosen the screws (2) and remove the lens (1).
2. Remove the bulb (3) from the socket (4) and replace it with a new one.
3. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

If the screwing procedure is inadequate, water may infiltrate into the lamp unit.

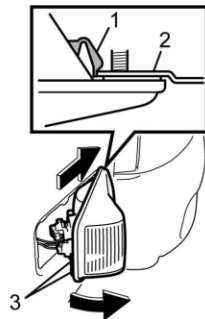
Sidemarkers Lamps (Including Turn Signal and Cornering Lamps)

Do not replace a bulb with other than the specified wattage. This will cause abnormal flashing, particularly for turn signal lamps.

When replacing a bulb, make sure the light switch is "OFF".

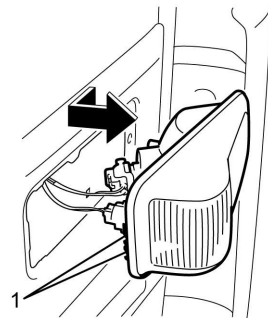


1. Open the front door, remove the rubber cap (1) in the lower part of the door, and loosen the nut (2).

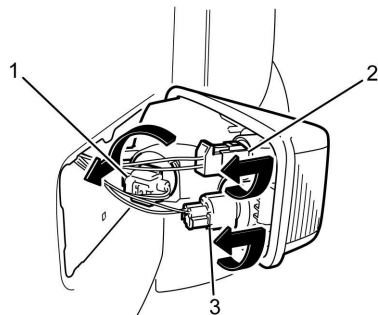


2. Slide the cornering lamp (3) and the side turn signal lamp forward relative to the vehicle. Disconnect the clip (1) on the lamp's rear side from the door panel (2) and pull out the lamp.

If you pull out the light rear section by too much when removing the clip on the rear side, the clip on the lamp front side may be damaged.

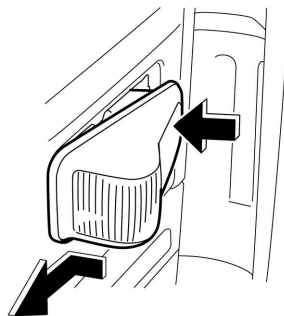


3. When the clip (1) has been removed, pull the lamp out while sliding it out toward the rear of the vehicle.
4. Loosen the socket by turning it counterclockwise.

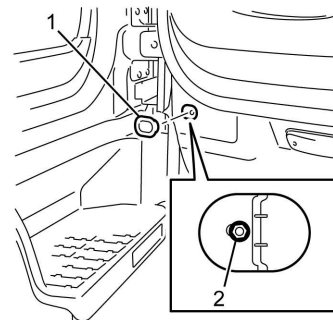


5. Pull the bulb out from the socket and replace it with a new one.
6. To install the lights, perform the same sequence of operations in reverse taking care of the following points:
 - A. Turn the socket clockwise to lock securely.

If the socket is not locked securely, water could get inside the light and lead to a breakdown.

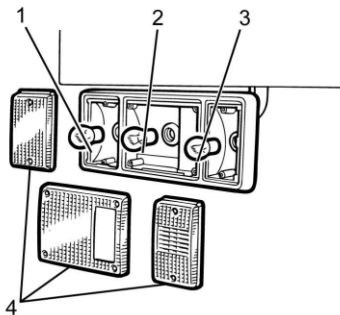


- B. Insert the clip on the back of the rear part of the light into the door panel.
 - C. Push the front part of the light into the door panel, and insert the clip on the back of the front part of the light in the door panel.



- D. Open the front door, tighten the nut from the inside of the door, and install the rubber cap.

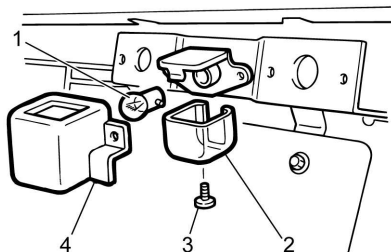
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps



1. Turn Signal Lamp
2. Taillamp/Stoplamp
3. Back-Up Lamp
4. Lens

1. Loosen the screws and remove the lens.
2. Loosen the bulb by turning it counterclockwise while pressing on it.
3. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

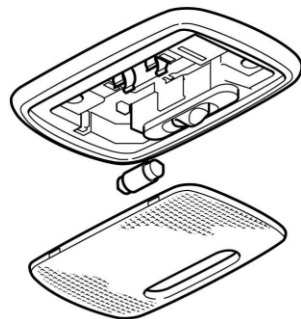
License Plate Lamp



1. Bulb
2. Lens
3. Screw
4. Cover

1. Loosen the screws and remove the cover.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Loosen the bulb by turning it counterclockwise while pressing on it.
4. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

Interior Lamps



1. Remove the lens and pull out the bulb.
2. To install the lights, follow the removal procedure in reverse.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

Electrical System

Following the after-delivery service, it is the owner's responsibility to check all wiring periodically for cracked, chafed or oil-soaked insulation and maintain it in a clean and tight condition to ensure satisfactory operation of the electrical system.

Replacing the Fuses and Relays

Your vehicle is equipped with fuses and fusible links to protect your electrical wiring and equipment in case of electrical overload.

When the lights do not come on or flash, or the equipment in the electrical system does not operate, check to see if a fuse has blown.

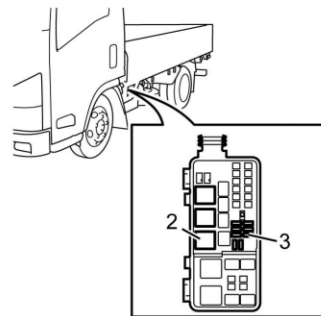
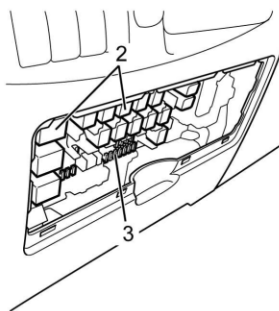
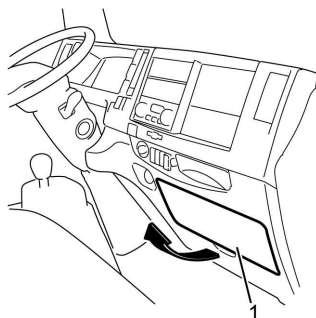
Fuses : In case of an electrical overload, the fuse will blow and stop the flow of current in the circuit before electrical components become damaged.

The cause of the circuit overload must be identified and corrected before the blown fuse is replaced, or else the new fuse will also blow. Since different circuits handle different amounts of current, fuses of various ampere ratings are used. Be sure to replace a blown fuse with a fuse of the correct rating.

To know if a fuse is blown or not, remove the suspected fuse and look at the wire for a break. If the wire is broken, replace the fuse with one of equal amperage rating. The amperage rating of each fuse is molded in its head.

Fuses are installed in the fuse panel.

The Location of Fuses and Relays



The fuses (3) and relays (2) are located in the lower part of the instrument panel in the center and in the left rear of the cab.

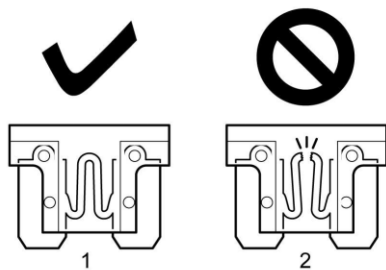
The cover (1) must be opened in order to carry out inspection and replacement. In addition, the cover (1) of the relay box at the left rear of the cab must also be opened at this time.

If you should spill water or a beverage on the cover, wipe it off before opening the cover.

The area around the cover may get warm when the vehicle is being driven, but this is not abnormal.

Replacing Fuses

1. Before replacing fuses, firmly apply the parking brake, move the selector lever to the P (Park) position, and turn the engine control switch to the LOCK position.
2. The fuse puller is stored in the fuse box inside the cab. Place the fuse puller on the fuse and pull it out.



3. If the fuse appears as shown (2), the fuse is blown. Replace with a spare fuse (1). Spare fuses are stored in the fuse box inside the cab.

Warning

Always use fuses specified for the vehicle. Using fuses with a rating other than that specified, or using wire or tin foil, etc., could result in fire or damage.

If the new fuses blow right away and the cause is unknown, contact your dealer.

Do not inspect or replace fuses when the starter switch is in the ON position. Doing so may lead to an accident.

When inspecting fuses, be sure to park the vehicle on flat, level ground and apply chocks to the wheels.

Replacing Relays

Before replacing the relays, contact the nearest dealer.

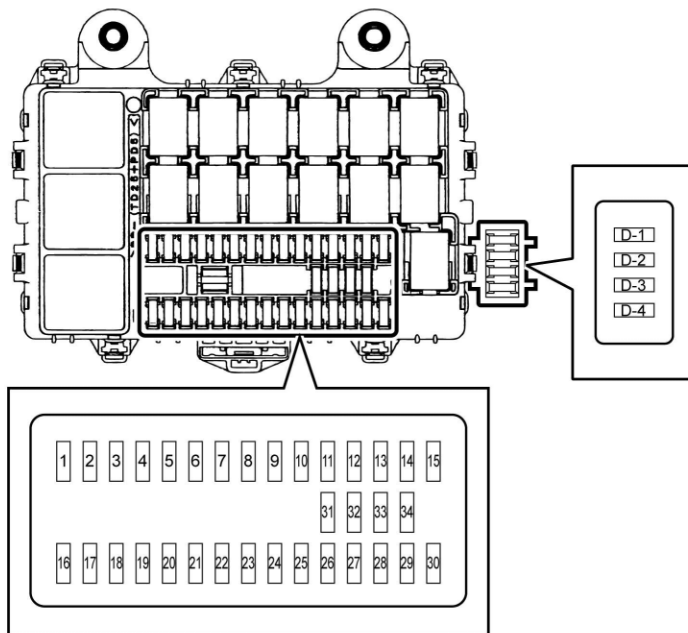
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

It is not necessary to open or close the cover unless trouble is found.

The relay box structure makes it difficult for water to enter. If you should spill water or a beverage of the cover, however, wipe it off before opening the cover.

The area around the cover will get warm when the vehicle is being driven, but this is not abnormal.

Fuse and Relay Location – Cab Interior

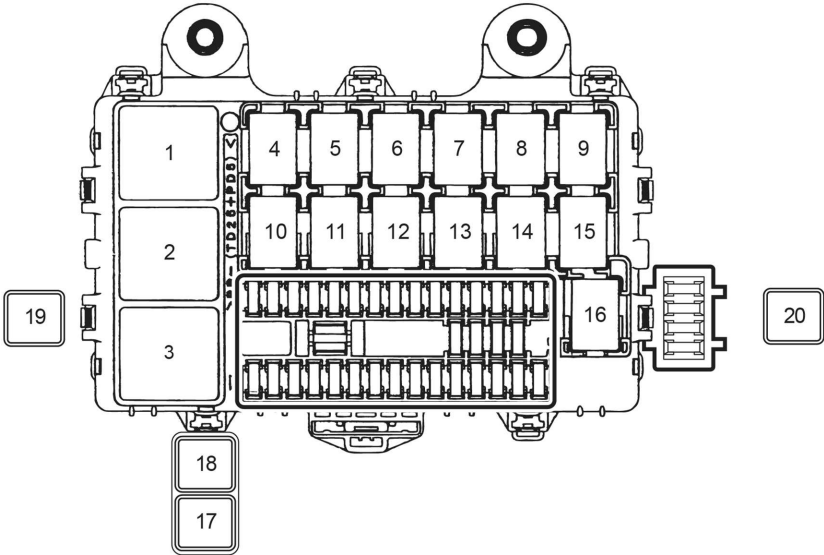


Fuses	Usage	Rating
1	Power window, rr	25A

Fuses	Usage	Rating
2	–	–

Fuses	Usage	Rating
3	Room lamp, audio	10A
4	Door lock	15A
5	Trailer brake	15A
6	P / Window	25A
7	Antilock brake system	10A
8	Wiper	25A
9	H / Lamp low (lh)	10A
10	Lamps (batt)	10A
11	H / Lamp low (rh)	10A
12	Brake lamps	10A
13	Starter	10A
14	H / Lamp high (lh)	10A
15	H / Lamp high (rh)	10A
16	Mirror heater	15A
17	Ignition 2	10A
18	Ignition 1	10A
19	–	–
20	ECM	10A
21	Meter	10A

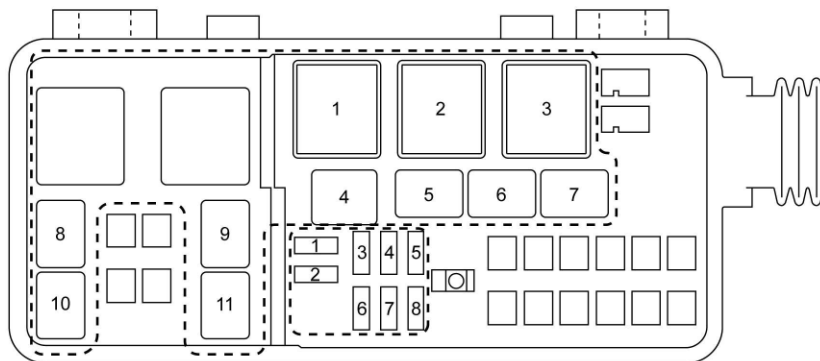
Fuses	Usage	Rating
22	ECU (batt)	10A
23	Mirror	10A
24	Audio, acc	15A
25	Horn	15A
26	Turn, hazard	15A
27	Tail lamps	10A
28	Illuminations	10A
29	Cornering lamps	10A
30	Air conditioner	10A
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	–	–
D-1	Cigar	20A
D-2	Accessories socket	15A
D-3	Power source	20A
D-4	–	–



Relays	Usage	Relays	Usage
1	Stop lamp	3	Key on
2	Daytime running lamp	4	TCM

Relays	Usage
5	Parking / Neutral
6	Wiper main
7	Horn
8	Wiper high low
9	Trailer brake
10	- / Rear power window
11	- / Charge (eng run)
12	Power window
13	Head lamp low
14	Vacuum pump
15	Head lamp high
16	Tail lamp
17	Cornering lamp
18	Cigar lighter
19	Power ACC
20	Blower motor

Fuse and Relay Location – Cab Exterior



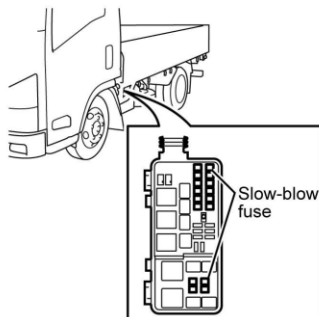
Fuses	Usage	Rating
1	Marker lamp	20A

Fuses	Usage	Rating
2	Tail main	20A

Fuses	Usage	Rating
3	PCM 1	25A
4	PCM 2	15A
5	PCM 3	15A
6	Power source	15A
7	Condenser fan	20A
8	A/C compressor	10A

Relays	Usage
1	Starter
2	—
3	—
4	A/C compressor
5	Condenser fan
6	Fuel pump
7	Dome lamp, rr
8	Marker lamp
9	PCM main
10	—
11	A/C

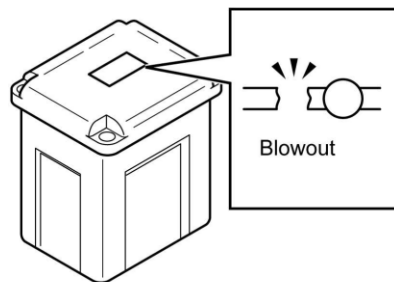
When Slow-blow Fuses Blow Out



Slow-blow fuses protect the electrical circuits, and they are installed so that they can be quickly replaced if there is a malfunction.

If an overload exists in the circuit from the battery, the slow-blow fuse will blow out before the wiring harness is damaged to protect the electrical circuitry.

Inspection



When the headlights and other devices in the electrical system do not work, but there is no problem with the fuses, check the slow-blow fuse.

The slow-blow fuse is blown if it looks like the illustration. Immediately contact the nearest dealer.

Warning

Always use fuses specified by the dealer when replacing the slow-blow fuse. Using fuses with a rating other than that specified, or using wire or tin foil, etc., could result in fire or damage.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the new fuses blow right away and the cause is unknown, contact your dealer.

Do not inspect or replace fuses when the starter switch is in the ON position. Doing so may lead to an accident.

When inspecting fuses, be sure to park the vehicle on flat, level ground and apply chocks to the wheels.

It is not necessary to open or close the cover unless trouble is found.

The relay box structure makes it difficult for water to enter. If you should spill water or a beverage of the cover, however, wipe it off before opening the cover.

The area around the cover will get warm when the vehicle is being driven, but this is not abnormal.

Wheels and Tires

The operating load and cold inflation pressure on the rim and wheel must not exceed the rim and wheel manufacturer's recommendations even though the tire may be approved for a higher load or inflation. Rim and wheel may be identified (stamped) with maximum load and maximum cold inflation rating. For rims and wheels not so identified or for service conditions exceeding the rate capacities, consult the rim and wheel manufacturer to determine rim and wheel capacities for the intended service. The factory-installed tires on this vehicle were selected to provide the best all-around tire performance for normal operation. When inflated, as shown on the vehicle, they have the load carrying capacity to operate satisfactorily at all loads up to and including the full rated load specified for the vehicle. For more information concerning the differences in capacities of tires and rims, refer to the "Tire and Rim Association Inc. Yearbook," or your authorized dealer or tire dealer.

Tire Inflation** Warning**

To reduce the risk of loss of vehicle control and personal injury:

Tires must be properly inflated, and your vehicle must not be overloaded (see the information on *Information on Loading the Vehicle* ⇨ 38 and "Tire Load and Inflation Table" under *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 201).

Be sure to keep tires properly inflated. A tire that is run while seriously underinflated may overheat to the point where the tire may lose air suddenly and/or catch fire, possibly resulting in personal injury and/or property damage.

See "Tire Load and Inflation Table" under *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 201.

In no case should the front or rear tire load exceed the maximum recommended gross axle weight rating (front GAWR or rear GAWR).

The efficiency of the vehicle will be upset if air pressure in the tires are not equal. Balanced inflation results when the tires on the same axle carry the same air pressure.

A difference in pressure between the front and rear tires may be permissible within certain limitations, however, there should not be a difference in pressures between the right and left tires on the same axle.

Always use a truck tire pressure gauge (a pocket-type gauge is not advised) when checking inflation pressures. Visual inspection of tires for inflation pressures is not enough, especially in the case of radial tires. Underinflated radial tires may look similar to correctly inflated radial tires. If the inflation pressure on a tire is found to be low frequently, have your dealer correct the cause.

Be sure to install the tire inflation valve caps to prevent dirt and moisture from getting into the valve core, which could cause air leakage. An underinflated tire in a dual wheel assembly is harder to notice than one in a single wheel assembly. The properly inflated dual tire carries its own load plus that of the underinflated tire. Both tires can

overheat, which may result in property damage and/or personal injury (see previous WARNING).

Tires Used or Stored for a Long Period of Time

Tires are a rubber product and degrade over time, even if they are not being used. If any of your tires is 5 to 7 years old or more, please have them inspected for safe driving. For further information, please check with the tire manufacturer.

Dual Tire Operation

The outer tire of a pair on dual wheel installations generally wears faster than the inner tire. If this occurs, reverse the position of the tires to equalize wear and get better tire life.

In addition, when trucks are driven continuously on high-crown roads, an increase in air pressure of 35 kPa (5 psi) in the outer tire of a dual tire operation will prolong outer tire life. Be sure not to exceed the inflation pressure limits shown on the "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate." See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ 237.

Wheel and Tire Balancing

Proper tire balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps to reduce tire tread wear. Out-of-balance tires can cause annoying vehicle vibration and uneven tire wear, such as cupping and flat spots. See your authorized dealer for wheel balancing.

Front End Alignment

Proper front end alignment improves tire tread mileage. Your vehicle's front end suspension parts should be inspected often and aligned when needed. (See the Maintenance Schedule for more information.) Improper alignment will not cause the vehicle to vibrate; however, improper toe-in alignment will cause front tires to roll at an angle that will result in faster tire wear. Incorrect caster or camber alignment will cause your front tires to wear unevenly, and may cause the vehicle to "pull" to the left or right.

Tire Traction

A decrease in driving, cornering and braking traction occurs when water, snow, ice, gravel or other material is on the road surface. Driving practices and vehicle speed should be adjusted to the road conditions. When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible

for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning, and may cause partial or complete loss of traction, vehicle control and stopping ability; this condition is also more likely with worn tires.

To reduce the chance of traction loss, follow these tips:

- Slow down during rainstorms or when roads are slushy.
- Slow down if the road has standing water or puddles.
- Replace tires when front tread depth is 3.2 mm (4/32 in) and rear tread depth is 1.6 mm (2/32 in).
- Keep tires properly inflated.

Tire Replacement Recommendations

Warning

Do not mix different construction types of tires on your vehicle such as radial, bias and bias-belted tires except in emergencies, because vehicle handling could be affected and may result in loss of vehicle control, or personal injury or death.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Consult your dealer before replacing wheels. Never use wheels that are not designed for the vehicle. Doing so would impede safe vehicle operation.

You should replace your tires when:

- Your tires are worn to a point where 3.2 mm (4/32 in) (front) and 1.6 mm (2/32 in) (rear) or the cord or fabric is exposed.
- Your tire tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deeply enough to expose the core, fabric or steel components.
- Your tire has a hump, bulge or split.
- Your tire sustains a puncture, cut or other damage that cannot be correctly repaired because of the size or location of the damage.

When replacing tires, you should use the same size, load range and construction type (bias or radial) as the original tires on your vehicle. Use of any other size or type tire may affect load carrying capacity, ride, handling, speedometer/odometer calibration, vehicle ground clearance and tire clearance to the chassis. If replacing only a single tire, it should be put on the same axle with other tires of equal diameter.

When replacing or rotating tires, all tires on an axle should be of the same tread design and should have the same outside diameter within certain limitations, particularly on LSD models. Consult your authorized dealer or tire dealer.

Recommended replacement tire for Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emissions

Tire size	Tire maker	Tire name	Rolling Resistance
LT215/85R16E	THE YOKOHAMA RUBBER CO., LTD.	TY213B	LRRA
225/70R19.5F	THE YOKOHAMA RUBBER CO., LTD.	TY287 MC2	LRRA
225/70R19.5G	CONTINENTAL CORPORATION	HSR	LRRA
225/70R19.5G	THE GOODYEAR TIRE & RUBBER CO.	G647 RSS	LRRA

If the original equipment tires are low rolling tires, it is recommended to use the LRRA tires shown in the above table.

Please refer to the emission control identifiers on Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emission plate for your original equipment tires. Also, please refer to "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate" for the location of the Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emission plate. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ 237.

Wheel Replacement Recommendations

Wheels must be replaced if they become damaged (for example: bent, heavily rusted, leak air) or if wheel nuts often become loose. Do not use bent wheels that have been straightened and do not use inner tubes in leaking wheels which are designed for tubeless tires. Such wheels may have structural damage and could fail without warning.

When replacing wheels for any reason, the new wheels should be equal in load capacity, diameter, width, offset and mounting types to those originally installed in your vehicle.

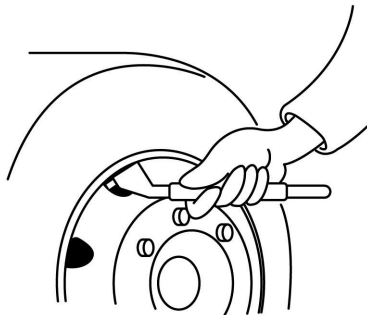
A wheel of the wrong size or type may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer/odometer calibration, stopping ability, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire or tire chain clearance on the body and chassis. Replacement with "used" wheels is not advised. They may have been subjected to harsh treatment or very high mileage and could fail without warning.

Warning

Consult your dealer before replacing wheels. Never use wheels that are not designed for the vehicle. Doing so would impede safe vehicle operation.

The use of wheels and/or tires with higher load carrying limits than originally equipped on your vehicle does not in itself increase the GAWR or the GVWR of the vehicle.

Replacement wheels can be obtained from the authorized dealer or tire dealer.

Checking Tires**Air Pressure**

Too low or too high a tire air pressure not only affects the ride or causes damage to the cargo but also can cause abnormal heat buildup, premature wear, a tire puncture, or may even cause the tire to burst.

Use an appropriate tire air pressure gauge when measuring the air pressure of a tire. Tire air pressure should be measured when the tire is cold, or before the vehicle is driven. (After driving, tire air pressure increases by about 10%.)

As the tire air pressure varies depending on the vehicle model and tire size, refer to the "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate" on the driver's door opening frame or the tire air pressure information on the following table.

Tire size	Tire air pressure kPa (psi)
LT215/85R16E	480 (70)
225/70R19.5F	590 (85)
225/70R19.5G	590 (85)

See “Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate” under *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ 237.

See “Tire Load and Inflation Table” under *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 201.

 Warning

Insufficiently inflated or worn-out tires are highly dangerous as they easily skid and can even burst. Should they burst, the tires may burn and this could cause a fire in the vehicle.

If you drive on under-inflated or flat tires, the wheel studs will be placed under excessive stress. Under such conditions, the bolts may break and the wheel may detach from the vehicle, possibly causing a crash.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Over-inflated tires result in a harsh ride and are likely to cause damage to the cargo. Under-inflated tires build up heat and could burst. Always keep the tires of your vehicle adjusted at the standard air pressures.

You and others could be seriously injured.

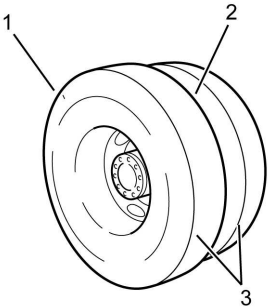
There should not be a difference tires on a dual-tire wheel.

It is not easy to visually identify an under-inflated dual-wheel tire or low aspect ratio tire (aspect ratio at 70%). Always use an appropriate tire air pressure gauge to check the air pressure of any tire.

If your vehicle is equipped with aluminum wheels, use an extension attached to the inner tire valve together with a standard tire

air pressure gauge or use a special air pressure gauge when checking the air pressure of a dual-wheel's inner tire.

Cracks and Other Damage

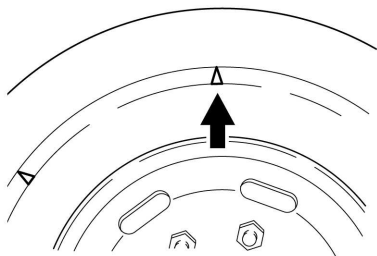


- 1. Sidewall surface
- 2. Gap between inner and outer tires
- 3. Tread

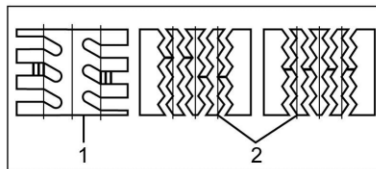
Check the tread and sidewall surfaces of each tire for cracks or other damage. Especially check the tread for nails or other metal pieces embedded in grooves and also the gap between the inner and outer tires of a dual-tire wheel for pebbles lodged in it.

When checking tires, pay special attention to: low air pressure; pebbles or nails in tread grooves; cracks or other damage on tire surfaces; uneven wear; and pebbles lodged in the gap between tires of dual-wheel tires.

Tread Depth and Abnormal Wear



Tread wear indicator position mark (Example)



Tread wear indicator (Example)

1. Lug pattern
2. Rib pattern

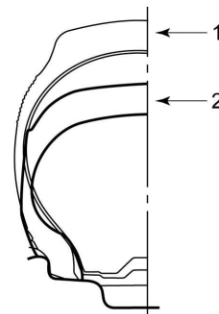
Using worn-out tires is dangerous because they might have an increased chance of getting punctured or bursting while driving. Check all tires to see if tread wear indicators appear on their treads and also check their entire tread for its depth with a depth gauge to make sure that the grooves are deeper than the specified depth. A tire with tread wear indicators appearing must be changed. Also, check the tires for uneven or otherwise abnormal wear.

⚠ Warning

Tires with excessively shallow tread grooves will increase the chance of skidding and, when driving at high speeds, hydroplaning. You and others could be seriously injured.

Hydroplaning occurs when a vehicle is running at high speeds on a wet road and a layer of water forms between the road surface and tires causing the tires to float on it. Hydroplaning prevents the driver from steering correctly and from slowing down the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Use of Low Aspect Ratio Tires



1. Standard tire
2. Low aspect ratio tire

Low aspect ratio tires for truck applications (aspect ratio at 70%) have an air volume 20% to 30% smaller than that of standard tires. Therefore, if air begins to leak, low aspect ratio tires adversely affect vehicle operation much faster than standard tires. Check air pressure of low aspect ratio tires more often than standard tires using a tire air pressure gauge.

Damaged Tires

Danger

It is dangerous to mount the wrong size tire on a wheel. If you do so, the tire/wheel can explode as air is being added. This explosion may result in severe personal injury or death. To learn which wheels and tires are correct, look at the "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate" on the left side rear pillar panel below the striker (single cab) or on the left center pillar panel beside the shoulder seat belt anchor (crew cab). Wheel size is also stamped on the side of each wheel.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

To help avoid personal injury and property damage if a wheel must be changed, seek expert tire services if you can. If you must remove the wheel without any such help, do the following:

- If the tire looks as if it may be underinflated, stand to the side and check whether the wheel assembly appears normal by comparing it to another wheel assembly on the vehicle.
- Let the air out of the tire by taking out the valve core. If you have a way to put air back in a tire, note that it is good safety practice to let the air out of both tires of a dual assembly before taking off the damaged tire and rim assembly from the vehicle. After letting out the air, take off the tire and rim assembly and install a spare tire and rim assembly.

If your vehicle is equipped with a differential lock system or limited slip differential (LSD), it might start moving when the engine power is transmitted to the rear axle even

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

when one of the wheels on the axle is raised clear of the ground. Do not start the engine with any rear wheel in contact with the ground.

If you are not fully experienced on the procedures to follow, and/or are not equipped with the proper tools and equipment, again, do not attempt to raise the vehicle, or remove or install the tire and wheel assembly—seek expert tire services.

- Do not put air back in a tire that has been run flat, or is seriously low on air, without first having the tire taken off the wheel and the tire checked for damage.
- Note that taking off and mounting tires on wheels requires proper tools, safety equipment and special training. A person can be severely injured or killed and damage can result from using the wrong service methods. Truck tires and wheels should be serviced only by trained people using the proper equipment.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Never add air to your tires unless an accurate pressure gauge is also used. When putting air in a tire on the vehicle, stand to the side and use a clip-on chuck and hose extension. In choosing the right tire pressure, be careful not to exceed the maximum pressure capability shown on the tire; see the tire pressure charts at the end of this manual.
- Tire mounting or repair can result in serious personal injury or death, if not performed correctly. This section has detailed instructions for proper wheel and tire replacement, so be sure to read and follow them. Truck fleet owners and operators: You can get written instructions on truck tire demounting, repair and mounting from Rubber Manufacturers Association (RMA), 1400 K Street N.W., Washington, D.C. 20005, and also from many tire stores.

Wheel Nut Torque**⚠ Warning**

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. Use the torque specified for the type of wheels on the vehicle. Snug all wheel nuts and then tighten to the specified torque in the numerical sequence shown. Improperly tightened wheel nuts could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving, possibly causing loss of control and personal injury and property damage.

When the vehicle, wheel or fasteners are new, have a technician tighten wheel stud nuts and rim clamp nuts with a torque wrench at 1 040 km (650 mi). This is necessary because the clamping system used on the wheels must seat before the fastener will hold a uniform clamp load and remain fully tightened. Also have a technician tighten wheel stud nuts and rim clamp nuts with a torque wrench after installing any wheel.

In addition, nut tightness on all wheels should be set with a torque wrench every 12 000 km (7,500 mi).

Tightening torque

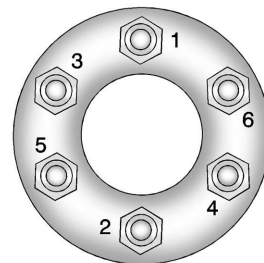
500 N·m (362 lb·ft)

Wheel Tightening Sequence

Some studs and nuts have left-hand threads. Those studs are marked on their ends with the letter "L".

Install valve stems of dual wheels 180 degrees opposite each other.

1. Finger-tighten the nuts.



2. Tighten all nuts to specified torque in order as shown. Never use oil or grease on the studs or nuts.
3. If a wheel stud and nut has been replaced, stake the stud and nut.

 Warning

To help reduce the risk of losing vehicle control and personal injury or death, if any stud has been damaged as a result of a loose running wheel, all studs for that wheel should be replaced. A loose running wheel may cause only one stud to break but damage to other studs may not be noticeable. If stud holes in a wheel have become elongated or distorted, replace the wheel.

Tire Pressure

Tire Load and Inflation Table

Tire Load and Inflation Table

TIRES FOR VEHICLES IN HIGHWAY SERVICE TIRE LOAD LIMITS AT VARIOUS COLD INFLATION PRESSURES											
Tire Size Designation		Cold Inflation Pressure (psi)									
		65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110
LT215/85R16E	Dual Single	(lbs)			2470 2680						
225/70R19.5F	Dual Single	(lbs)						3415 3640			
225/70R19.5G	Dual Single	(lbs)									3750 3970

See *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 191.

Tire Rotation

Warning

Be sure to check the wheel studs, wheel nuts and disc wheel for any abnormality whenever the disc wheel is removed.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

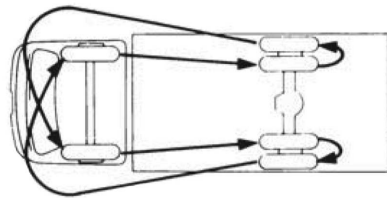
If you find any abnormal condition on the wheel studs, wheel nuts or disc wheel, do not continue to use the wheel. Contact the nearest dealer as soon as possible

Tires at different locations wear differently. For uniform tire wear and longer tire life, you should rotate the tires on your vehicle regularly. Make sure to use tires of the same type on the same axle. If you install tires of different types on the same axle, the vehicle may drift right or left when you apply the brakes.

New tires are more likely to build up heat and wear faster than old tires, so they should be installed on the front axle where the load is smaller.

If there is a difference in diameter between the inner and outer tires of a dual-tire wheel, install the smaller diameter tire inside.

The difference in diameter of the tires for a dual-tire wheel should be within the limit specified in the table below. If the limit is exceeded, the tires wear more rapidly than they should.



Example

Vehicles with the aluminum wheel option may have steel wheels on the inner rear position. These wheels must only be mounted on the inner rear positions and should only be rotated from side to side.

 Warning

If tires of different sizes, load ranges, constructions, or tread designs are used between the front and rear axles, do not exchange tires between the front and rear axles; otherwise, the tires may get loaded beyond their limits. This will also affect vehicle handling, brake performance, and ride comfort. This is highly dangerous because the tires and disc wheels could break down under an excessive load. You and others could be seriously injured.

Permissible diameter difference	
Radial tire	Within 8 mm (0.31 in)

The tightening torque of the wheel nuts may decrease after a tire change due to their initial settlement. Upon driving 50 to 100 km (31 to 62 mi) after a tire change,

retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques according to the instructions in "Retightening Wheel Nuts" following.

See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.

Retightening Wheel Nuts

Check the wheel nuts to confirm that they are tightened to the specified torque by using a torque wrench.

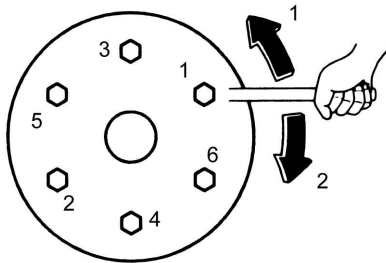
Use the following method to check for loose wheel nuts. Tightening torque of the wheel nuts may decrease after tire change or rotation due to initial settling. After driving 1 040 km (650 mi) and after 10 400 km (6,500 mi), be sure to retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque.

Repeat whenever a wheel, wheel bolt, or wheel nut is removed.

See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.

Tightening torque
500 N·m (362 lb·ft)

Single Tire

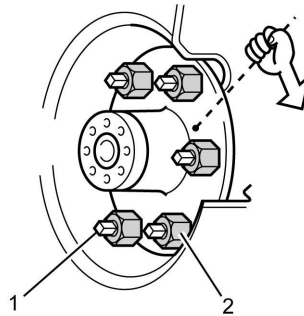


1. Left side tire
2. Right side tire

Turn the wheel nuts in the tightening direction to the specified torque.

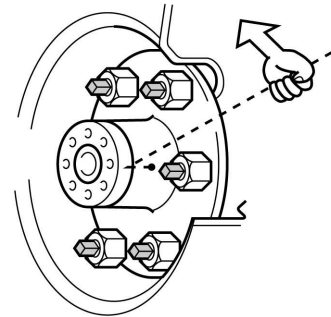
Retightening of nuts on left rear dual-tire wheel

Dual Tire

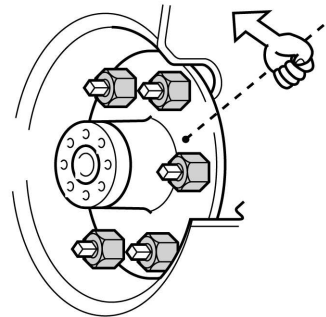


1. Inner Nut
2. Outer Nut

1. Loosen the outer wheel nuts on the wheel studs.



2. Tighten the inner wheel nuts of the same wheel to the specified torque.



3. Next, tighten the outer wheel nuts to the specified torque.

 Warning

If you find any abnormal conditions with the wheel nuts such as frequent loosening of retightened nuts, have your vehicle checked or serviced at the nearest dealer as soon as possible.

Fully engage the wheel wrench on a wheel nut to be able to tighten the nut to the specified torque. However, do not use a pipe as a handle extension or your foot to apply force on the wrench. This could tighten the nut more than necessary and damage the components.

Both under-tightening and over-tightening the wheel nuts might cause broken wheel studs or a cracked disc wheel and could lead to wheel detachment. Adhere to the specified tightening torque.

When replacing a tire with a new one, use only a tire of the same type and size as the replaced tire; otherwise, driving safety could be compromised. Avoid mixing different types and sizes of tires.

Tire Chains**Selecting Tire Chains**

Chain size is determined by tire size. Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

Regulations on the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check the local regulations before installing tire chains.

Tire Chain Installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing tire chains:

- Pull completely out of the roadway when installing, servicing, and removing tire chains.
- Install chains on the rear wheels only. Do not install chains on the front wheels.
- Install chains securely with no slack. Verify that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.

Driving Information

When driving, accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a speed suitable for road conditions – generally 30 to 50 km/h (20 to 30 mph).

 Warning

- Refer to the instructions supplied with the chains.
- Do not drive with a broken chain. If there is chain failure stop immediately and repair or remove.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking.
- Drive cautiously and lower speed to that recommended by the chain manufacturer.
- If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed.

Caution

Avoid driving on a dry road with chains installed to avoid possible chain, vehicle, and road surface damage.

If a Tire Goes Flat

When the tire goes flat while driving, ease off the accelerator pedal, avoid hard braking, hold on to the steering wheel firmly, and stop the vehicle. The tire should be changed in a safe, open location to prevent obstructing other vehicles or pedestrians.

Warning

If you continue to drive on a flat tire, undue force will be applied to the wheel studs, possibly causing the studs to break and the wheel to come off. You and others could be seriously injured.

See "Tire Replacement Recommendations" under *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 191.

Jump Starting

Jump Starting - North America

When the Battery is Discharged

Use a jumper cable (sold separately) and the battery of another vehicle to start the engine in the following sequence.

Danger

Follow the precautions listed in the jump starting instructions when working on or near the battery. Personal injury (particularly to eyes) or property damage may result from battery explosion, battery fluid or electrical (short circuit) burns.

If battery fluid should come in contact with an eye, immediately wash away using a large amount of water and continue washing for at least 5 minutes. Following this, you should seek medical assistance.

When using tools or other metal objects in the vicinity of the battery, take care to prevent them from coming into contact with the positive terminal. As the vehicle itself will conduct electricity, any such contact can result in a short-circuit and a highly dangerous electric shock.

A vehicle battery generates extremely flammable hydrogen gas. For this reason, operations producing sparks or requiring the usage of an open flame must never

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

be carried out near a vehicle battery. Failure to observe this precaution can result in explosion if the hydrogen gas ignites. Whenever wiping up battery fluid, a damp cloth should be used.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acid, and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, to reduce the risk of personal injury when working near a battery:

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over a battery whenever possible.
- Do not expose a battery to open flames or sparks.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately and thoroughly, and get medical help.
- Follow each step in the jump starting instructions.

Always stop the engine whenever the battery is to be inspected.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

Dilute sulfuric acid is used as the battery fluid. Special care must be taken to ensure that this fluid does not come into contact with skin, clothing, or metal surfaces.

When disconnecting the cables from the terminals, start with the negative terminal. When connecting them, the negative terminal should be reconnected last.

You and others could be seriously injured.

⚠ Warning

For safety and the protection of the vehicle, do not push-start the vehicle.

Never tow the vehicle to start because a surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

Also, this vehicle has a 12-volt battery, 12-volt starting system and a negative ground electrical system; be sure the vehicle or equipment used to jump start
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

your engine is also 12-volt. Use of any other system may damage the vehicle's electrical components.

Under no circumstances should the battery's positive and negative terminals be put in contact with one another.

When connecting the cables, under no circumstances should the clips be allowed to touch each other.

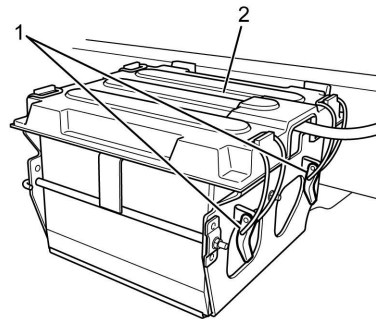
Do not disconnect a battery terminal with the engine running. It could cause a breakdown in the electrical system.

You and others could be seriously injured.

If you notice battery fluid leaking, have an inspection carried out immediately by the nearest dealer.

1. Use a vehicle that has a charged battery with the same voltage. Make sure that the other vehicle also has a 12-volt starting system, and that it is the negative (-) terminal which is grounded (attached to the engine block, or frame rail).

2. Position the vehicle with the good (charged) battery so that the booster (jumper) cables will reach. But never let the vehicles touch. Also, be sure the booster cables to be used do not have loose or missing insulation.
3. In both vehicles, turn off the ignition (engine control) switch and all lights and accessories except the hazard flasher or any lights needed for the work area. In both vehicles, apply the parking brake firmly and move the selector lever to the "P" position.

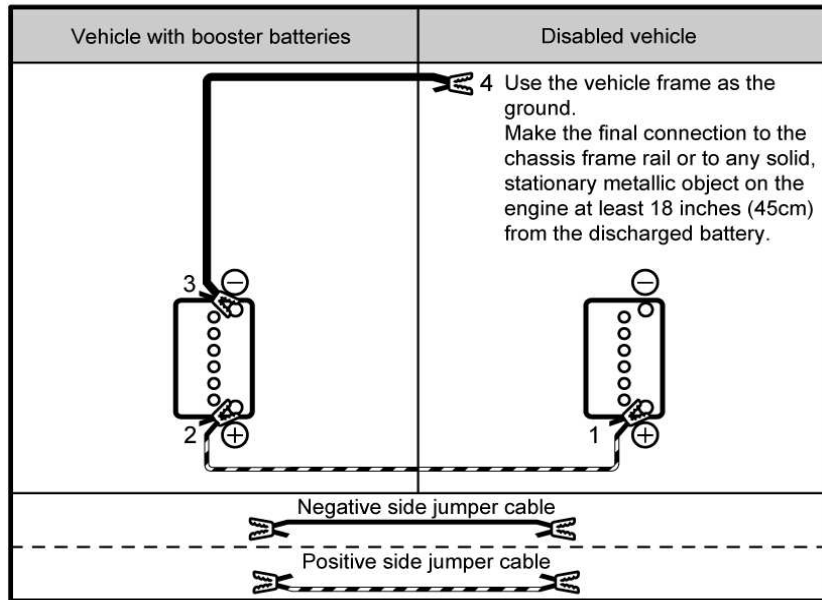


4. Unlatch the latches (1) and remove the battery cover (2) and connect the jumper cables in the numbered sequence in the

drawing below. Make sure the cable clamps do not touch any other metal parts.

Make sure the cables are not on or near pulleys, fans or other parts that will move when the engine is started.

When it is difficult to start the engine in a cold area, first start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery or batteries and a few minutes after that start the engine of the disabled vehicle.



5. After connecting the cables, start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery.

6. Slightly rev up the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

7. If the engine in the disabled vehicle starts, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence as they were connected.

Towing the Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Proper equipment must be used to prevent damage to vehicles during any towing. State and local laws which apply to vehicles in tow must be followed. Vehicles should not be towed at speeds in excess of 88 km/h (55 mph).

Connect to the main structural parts of the vehicle. Do not attach to bumpers, tow hooks or brackets. Use only equipment designed for this purpose. Follow the instructions of the wrecker manufacturer.

A safety chain system must be used.

The procedures below must be followed when towing to prevent possible damage.

Front End Towing (Front Wheels Off Ground)

To prepare a disabled vehicle for front end towing with front wheels raised off the ground, the following steps are necessary:

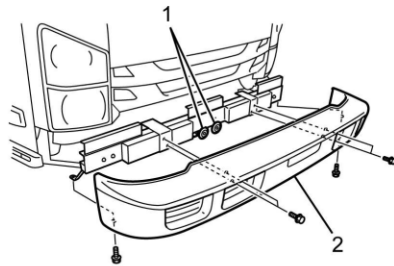
- Block the rear wheels of the disabled vehicle.
- Disconnect the driveshaft at the rear axle. Secure the driveshaft to the frame or crossmember.

When towing, disconnect the driveshaft at the rear axle to ensure the transmission is not damaged.

The rear end of the driveshaft must be disconnected and safely secured if the 80 km (50 mi) or 48 km/h (30 mph) is exceeded.

If there is damage or suspected damage to the rear axle, remove the axle shafts. Cover the hub openings to prevent the loss of lubricant or entry of dirt or foreign objects.

Place a 10 cm (4 in) wood beam against the towing guide behind the bumper. (If no 10 cm (4 in) is available, then remove the bumper.) Ensure towing chains do not come into contact with the horns or the bumper. (If towing chains contact the bumper, then remove the bumper.)



1. Horns
2. Bumper

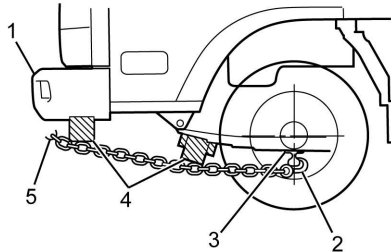
After Towing

After towing the vehicle, block the rear wheels and install axle shafts or driveshaft.

Apply the parking brake before disconnecting from the towing vehicle.

Front End Towing (All Wheels On the Ground)

Your vehicle may be towed on all wheels provided the steering is operable. Remember that power steering and brakes will not have power assist. There must be a tow bar installed between the tow vehicle and the disabled vehicle.



Towing with all wheels on the ground

1. Bumper
2. Tow Hook
3. Front Axle
4. Towing Guide
5. Towing Chain

To prepare a disabled vehicle for front end towing with all wheels on the ground, the following steps are necessary:

- Block the rear wheels of the disabled vehicle.
- Disconnect the driveshaft at the rear axle. Secure the driveshaft to the frame or crossmember.

When towing, disconnect the driveshaft at the rear axle to ensure the transmission is not damaged.

The rear end of the driveshaft must be disconnected and safely secured if the 80 km (50 mi) or 48 km/h (30 mph) is exceeded.

Provide wood blocking to prevent towing chains and bar from coming into contact with the bumper.

If there is damage or suspected damage to the rear axle, remove the axle shafts.

Cover the hub openings to prevent the loss of lubricant or entry of dirt or foreign objects.

After Towing

After towing the vehicle, block the rear wheels and install axle shafts or driveshaft.

Apply the parking brake before disconnecting from the towing vehicle. Check and fill rear axle with oil, if required.

Rear End Towing

When towing a vehicle with rear wheels raised, secure the steering wheel to maintain straight-ahead position. Make certain that the front axle is not loaded

beyond the front axle gross axle weight rating (GAWR) as indicated on the vehicle's VIN and weight rating plate.

Special Towing Instructions

1. All state and local laws regarding such items as warning signals, night illumination, speed, etc., must be followed.
2. Safety chains must be used.
3. No vehicle should ever be towed over 88 km/h (55 mph).
4. Loose or protruding parts of damaged vehicles should be secured prior to moving.
5. A safety chain system completely independent of the primary lifting and towing attachment must be used.
6. Operators should refrain from going under a vehicle which is being lifted by the towing equipment unless the vehicle is adequately supported by safety stands.
7. No towing operation which for any reason jeopardizes the safety of the wrecker operator or any bystanders or other motorists should be attempted.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Exterior Finish

The paint finish on your vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention, and durability.

While cleaning the vehicle, do not grip the roof marker lamps to prevent damage or water leakage.

Washing

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Wash the vehicle in lukewarm or cold water. Do not use hot water or wash your vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly from the surface and not allowed to dry on the finish.

These vehicles are designed to operate under normal environmental conditions to withstand natural elements. However, unusual conditions such as high-pressure car washers may cause water to enter inside the vehicle. If the vehicle is operated with foreign material adhering to the exterior,

this material may react chemically with paint, resulting in staining, discoloration, rusting or corrosion of components. Also, the material may become trapped within mechanical components, adversely affecting their functions or forming an aerodynamic resistance. In the following cases, therefore, the vehicle must be washed and all foreign matter removed.

- When soot, iron powder, dead bugs, bird droppings, tree sap, or oily matter from coal tar and smoke has adhered to painted surfaces.
- When the vehicle has been driven in coastal areas
- When the vehicle has been driven on roads where road chemicals have been applied
- When a large amount of mud or dirt has adhered to the exterior

To wash the vehicle:

1. Fully turn on the tap, and wash out the undercarriage and suspension.
2. Close all openings and wash the cab and cargo body panels using a neutral detergent.
3. Clean wheels and tires using a brush and detergent.

4. After washing away all remaining detergent, use a chamois or other clean cloth to fully remove all moisture and water droplets

Warning

Follow the manufacturer's advice whenever cleaning agents or other chemicals are used, inside or outside the vehicle. Some cleaners may be poisonous or flammable, and improper use may cause personal injury or damage. When cleaning the inside or outside of the vehicle, do not use volatile cleaning solvents, such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers; or such cleaning materials as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents, except as noted in the following fabric cleaning advice on stain removal.

Never use carbon tetrachloride, gasoline, benzene or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Open all vehicle doors for ventilation when ANY cleaning agents or other chemicals are used in the interior.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Overexposure to some vapors may result in a health problem that is more likely to occur in small, unventilated spaces.

You and others could be seriously injured.

Do not apply water directly in order to clean the cab interior. Failure to observe this precaution can result in malfunction or breakdown of electronic control units and electrical components, or in rusting of the cab floor. Do not apply water from a high-pressure washer nozzle directly to the electric connectors. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to faulty operation of the electrical system. If an automatic car or truck wash is used with vehicles having dark or metallic coating, the painted surfaces can be damaged by the brushes, lose their luster, or be very noticeably scratched.

Do not direct a large amount of water at the air inlet openings. Do not apply water to the engine compartment or at electrical components. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to a poorly starting and operating engine and problems in the

electrical system. Ensure that mirrors and the antenna are retracted before washing the vehicle.

If an automatic car or truck wash must be used, avoid a high-temperature, high pressure type machine. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to heat deformation and breakage of plastic components, or to water leaks into the cab. When using an automatic car or truck wash, ensure that a distance of at least 0.4 m (15.75 in) is maintained between the nozzle and the vehicle, and when washing door windows, that the spray is perpendicular to the surface of the glass.

Ensure that all detergent is fully washed and wiped away. Particularly in the case of strong alkaline detergents (typically those for industrial uses), there is a danger that hairline cracks can develop in lighting-cluster lenses if the vehicle is operated without detergent being fully wiped away. Always read the detergent manufacturer's instructions carefully before use. Airborne dirt that adheres to plastic front bumpers as a result of rain, for example, can be difficult to remove. In such a case, use a

commercially available cleaner to clean away the dirt, and then apply a wax for use with plastic components.

Vehicle Storage

In order to maintain your vehicle's attractive appearance as long as possible, special consideration must be given to its storage location.

If the vehicle is stored or kept for an extended period of time in any of the following locations, a chemical change may occur in the paint work, resulting in staining, discoloration, rusting, and corrosion of components.

- Locations where a large amount of oily matter, soot, heavy smoke or metal powder can adhere to the vehicle.
- Areas around pharmaceutical plants and other facilities that discharge chemical matter.
- Coastal areas
- Locations where a large amount of dead bugs, bird droppings or tree sap can adhere to the vehicle.

Polishing and Waxing

Periodic polishing and waxing is recommended to remove built-up residue and eliminate any "weathered" appearance.

Your authorized dealer offers several polishes and cleaners which have proven value in maintaining original finish appearance and durability.

Painted and chrome-plated surfaces should be waxed once or twice a month, or whenever water is being poorly repelled on the surfaces. Ensure that wax is not applied in direct sunlight, and that the temperature of the painted surface is no more than 40 °C (104 °F).

Always follow the instructions provided with your wax product.

Do not use wax containing abrasive material. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to scratching of painted surfaces or plastic components.

The application of wax to rubber component surfaces can result in permanent whitening.

Wax must not be applied to the windshield. Failure to observe this precaution can result in irregular reflection of light, impairing your view.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to a high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Weatherstrip Lubrication

All weatherstrips should be periodically lubricated (minimum of every six months) with a silicone grease lubricant. A thin film of silicone grease lubricant should be applied using a clean cloth. Silicone grease application will lengthen weatherstrip life, help sealing, and assist in eliminating squeaks.

Windshield Care

Wax must not be applied to the windshield. A layer of wax can impair your view in rainy weather and can also lead to rough movements of the windshield wiper. If engine oil or grease comes into contact

with the windshield, staining or discoloration may result. It must be immediately cleaned away.

If not fully cleaned by the windshield wipers, the windshield should be cleaned using glass cleaner. If your windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

The windshield wipers on your truck can be pulled out from the windshield to provide easier access for cleaning.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a non-abrasive cleaner. Your windshield is clean if beads do not form when rinsing with water. Clean the blade by wiping with a cloth soaked in a solution of one-half water and one-half methanol alcohol. Then rinse the blade with water.

The windshield wiper arms may be swung out, away from the glass, to provide easy access for cleaning.

Do not hang on to the roof marker lamps while cleaning the windshield or damage may occur (resulting in possible water leakage).

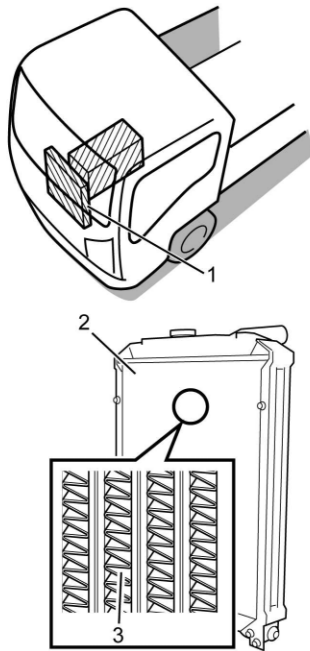
External Engine Cleaning

The engine does not need periodic cleaning, nor is it recommended.

If you insist on cleaning the engine, clean it only when it is cold, never when it is warm or hot, and never when the engine is running. Spraying or pouring water or other fluids on your engine when it is warm or hot, or when it is running, can cause serious damage to the engine and its components, particularly the fuel supply pump.

Handling the Radiator

Cleaning the Radiator Core



Cooling efficiency is compromised when there is dirt or dust plugging air passages in the radiator core (1). This can also cause corrosion of the cores (3). Wash the radiator core with tap water every 24 months.

Make sure to turn the engine off and remove the key from the ignition before cleaning the cores.

The engine, exhaust pipe, and radiator will be hot immediately after the vehicle is driven. Be careful around these parts to prevent burns.

Clean the engine when it is cold.

Do not clean the radiator or surrounding areas using water that is supplied under high pressure. Doing so may cause damage.

When cleaning the radiator core, do not crush or damage the fins. The fins are very fragile so be careful not to bend them out of shape. If they become deformed, their cooling efficiency will be impaired. Before cleaning, ensure that no water will splash onto the surrounding electrical components and wires. If stubborn dirt still remains even after the radiator core has been cleaned, have the vehicle inspected and serviced.

Corrosion Protection

Your vehicle has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes were used on most parts of your vehicle when it was built to help maintain good appearance, strength, and reliable operation. However, some parts which normally are not visible (such as those under the vehicle and under the hood) are such that surface rust will not affect their reliability. So corrosion protection is not needed or used on these parts.

Sheet Metal Damage

If your vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to the parts repaired or replaced so that corrosion protection is restored. See "Finish Damage" later in this section.

Foreign Material Deposits

Calcium chloride and other salts, ice-melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, and other foreign matter may damage vehicle finishes if left on painted surfaces. Prompt washing may not completely remove all of these deposits.

Other cleaners may be needed. When using chemical cleaners, be sure they are safe for use on painted surfaces.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense. Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch up materials available from your authorized dealer or other service outlets. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal, and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on underbody parts such as fuel lines, frames, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have been provided with corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Take care to clean well any areas where mud and other debris can collect. Sediment packed in

closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. If desired, your authorized dealer can do this for you.

Interior Care

General

Remove dust and dirt from the interior of the cab using an automotive cleaner or vacuum cleaner, and gently wipe surfaces clean using a cloth wet with warm or cold water.

Warning

Water should never be sprayed directly into the interior of the cab when cleaning. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to vehicle malfunction and possibly to fire if water should enter the audio system or other electrical components located underneath the floor carpet.

Petroleum ether, gasoline and other organic solvents should not be used to clean safety belts. In addition, safety belt webbing should be neither bleached nor redyed. Failure to observe these

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

precautions can lead to the performance or strength of the safety belts being impaired. In the case of a collision, therefore, the safety belts could be insufficiently effective, and serious life-threatening injuries could result. When cleaning, use warm water in which a small amount of neutral detergent has been dissolved to gently wipe the safety belts.

Follow the manufacturer's advice whenever cleaning agents or other chemicals are used, inside or outside the vehicle. Some cleaners may be poisonous or flammable, and improper use may cause personal injury or damage. When cleaning the inside or outside of the vehicle, do not use volatile cleaning solvents, such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers; or such cleaning materials as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents, except as noted in the following fabric cleaning advice on stain removal.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Never use carbon tetrachloride, gasoline, benzene or naphtha for any cleaning purpose.

Open all vehicle doors for ventilation when ANY cleaning agents or other chemicals are used in the interior. Overexposure to some vapors may result in a health problem that is more likely to occur in small, unventilated spaces.

You and others could be seriously injured.

The interior of the vehicle must never be cleaned using acidic or alkaline solvents, or petroleum ether, gasoline, and other organic solvents. Failure to observe this precaution can result in discoloration and staining. It should be noted that certain types of cleaning products contain these compounds. Be sure to read cleaning product labels carefully.

Air fresheners (liquid, solid, gel, or plate types) must not come into direct contact with, or spill onto, interior components such as the air conditioning or audio system.

Compounds contained in these products can cause discoloration, staining, or peeling of paint.

Glass cleaners that contain these compounds must not be used to clean the inside of the windshield or window glass. To clean the glass, wipe it using a cloth wet with warm or cold water.

To avoid possible permanent discoloration of light colored seats, Do not let materials with non-fast colors come into contact with seat trim materials until these materials are totally dry. This includes certain types of casual clothing, such as colored denims, corduroys, leathers, and suedes, as well as decorative paper.

With the use of modern trim materials, it is very important that you use proper cleaning techniques and cleaners. Failing to do this on the first cleaning may result in water spots, spot rings, or setting of stains or soilage — all of which are more difficult to remove in a second cleaning.

Dust and loose dirt that collect on interior fabric should be removed often with a vacuum cleaner or soft bristle brush. Wipe vinyl or leather trim regularly with a clean, damp cloth. Normal trim soils, spots, or stains can be cleaned with these cleaners.

Remember these basic steps before cleaning:

- Remove stains as quickly as possible before they set.
- Use a clean cloth or sponge, and change to a clean area often. A soft brush maybe used if stains persist.
- Use solvent-type cleaners only in a well ventilated area: also, do not saturate the stained area.
- If a ring forms after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately.
- Follow specific instructions on cleaner labels.

General Cleaning of Soiled or Water Spotted Fabric Type Trim with Foam Type Cleaner

Vacuum the area thoroughly to remove any loose dirt.

Always clean a whole trim panel or section. Mask surrounding trim along stitch or welt lines.

Use suds on a clean sponge. Do not brush wet suede. Do not saturate the material or rub it harshly. Immediately after cleaning, remove suds with a sponge and rinse with a

clean wet sponge. Wipe off remaining residue with a slightly damp absorbent towel or cloth.

Immediately after wiping, force-dry the fabric with an air hose. A heat dryer or heat lamp may be used. Use caution with a heat dryer or lamp to help prevent damage.

When trim materials with a sheen or luster finish are dry, wipe the fabric lightly with a soft, dry, clean cloth to restore its sheen or luster. For suede, raise nap with a dry scrub brush and vacuum to remove any final traces of residue.

Spot Cleaning Fabric Type Trim with Solvent Type Cleaner

Before trying to remove a spot or stain from fabric, try to find out the type and age of the spot or stain. Some spots or stains can be removed with water or a mild soap solution. Spots or stains should always be removed as soon as possible.

Some types of stains or soilage, such as lipstick, inks, and grease, are very difficult (sometimes impossible) to remove completely. When cleaning this type of stain or soilage, be sure not to enlarge the soiled area.

- Gently scrape excess stain from the trim material with a clean, dull knife or scraper. Use very little cleaner, light pressure, and clean cloths, preferably cheesecloth. Cleaning should start at the outside of the stain feathering towards the center. Keep changing to a clean section of cloth.
- When you clean a stain from fabric, immediately dry the area with an air hose, heat dryer, or heat lamp to help prevent a cleaning ring. Use caution with heat dryer or lamp to help prevent fabric damage.
- If a ring forms, immediately repeat the cleaning operation over a slightly larger area with emphasis on feathering towards its center. If a ring still remains, mask off surrounding trim sections and clean the entire soiled area with a foam type cleaner.

See "Removal of Specific Stains."

Removal of Specific Stains

Greasy or Oily Stains – Includes grease, oil, butter, margarine, shoe polish, coffee with cream, chewing gum, cosmetic creams, vegetable oils, wax crayon, tar, and asphalts.

- Carefully scrape off excess stain; then use solvent type cleaner.
- Shoe polish, wax crayons, tar, and asphalts will stain if left on trim; they should be removed as soon as possible. Use care as cleaner will dissolve them and may cause them to bleed.

Non-Greasy Stains – Includes catsup, coffee (black), egg, fruit, fruit juice, milk, soft drinks, wine, vomit, and blood.

- Carefully scrape off excess stain; then sponge the stain with cool water.
- If a stain remains, use Multi-Purpose Powdered Cleaner (Foam type) as previously described.
- If an odor lingers after cleaning vomit or urine, treat the area with a water-baking soda solution: 5 milliliters (1 teaspoon) of baking soda to 250 milliliters (1 cup) of lukewarm water.
- Finally, if needed, clean lightly with Fabric Cleaner (Solvent type).

Combination Stains – Includes candy, ice cream, mayonnaise, chili sauce, and unknown stains.

- Carefully scrape off excess stain; then clean with cool water and allow to dry.

- If stain remains, clean it with Fabric Cleaner (Solvent type).

Cleaning Vinyl Trim

Ordinary soilage can be removed from vinyl or leather with warm water and mild soap, such as saddle soap or oil soap, or an equivalent.

- Apply a small amount of soap solution and let it soak for a few minutes to loosen dirt; then, rub briskly with a clean, damp cloth to remove dirt and traces of soap. This may be done several times, if needed.
- Soilage such as tars, asphalts, shoe polish, etc., will stain if left on trim. They should be wiped off as quickly as possible and the area cleaned with a clean cloth dampened with solvent type vinyl leather cleaner.

Fabric Seat Covering and Carpet Care

Remove dirt and dust using a home-use electric vacuum cleaner.

Do not remove the carpet. Use standard household cleaning products and methods to remove stains from food, drink, and the like.

Be sure to use neutral detergents or cleaning products indicated as higher alcohol based detergents.

Glass Surfaces

Glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis. Use of glass cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films sometimes caused by ingredients used in vinyls and interior plastics.

Service and Maintenance

Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 218

Owner Checks and Services

Owner Checks and Services 226

Additional Maintenance and Care

Additional Maintenance and Care 232

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 234

Maintenance Replacement Parts 235

Maintenance Schedule

Caution

Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.

Do not have chemical flushes that are not approved by GM performed on the vehicle. The use of flushes, solvents, cleaners, or lubricants that are not approved by GM could damage the vehicle, requiring expensive repairs that are not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Make sure the vehicle is inspected at regular intervals. Inspections and maintenance enable you to use the vehicle with peace of mind. They also extend the vehicle's service life.

For safe and economical driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected and serviced regularly according to the schedule indicated in this chapter.

To drive your vehicle safely and at minimum cost, it is essential to have your vehicle regularly inspected and serviced at your dealer as per the specified maintenance schedule.

Contact your dealer for inspection that requires disassembly and/or special equipment.

The Maintenance Schedule in this manual and a Warranty Information Booklet are supplied with your vehicle. Read all publications for a full understanding of your vehicle's maintenance needs.

The quality of maintenance your new vehicle receives is as important as the regularity with which it is serviced. Authorized dealers provide nationwide quality in customer service. The program includes the training of dealer technicians throughout the country and is supported with a continuous follow-up of publications and other service information. The use of genuine parts and accessories, which have the same high quality standards as original equipment parts, and the use of factory approved tools developed and tested for use by the authorized dealer also contribute to the high quality of service.

If you have any questions on how to keep your truck or chassis in good condition, see your authorized dealer, the place many truck owners choose to have their maintenance work done. Your authorized dealer can be relied upon to use proper parts and practices.

Some of these services can be complex, so unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should let your authorized dealer's service department or another qualified service center do these jobs.

The schedule includes general maintenance which you or a qualified technician should perform periodically.

Explanation of Vehicle Maintenance and Log

The following is a brief explanation of normal vehicle use.

NORMAL VEHICLE USE—The maintenance instructions contained in this section are based on the assumption that your vehicle will be used as designed:

- To carry passengers and cargo with the limitations indicated on the vehicle VIN and GVW plate.
- On reasonable road surfaces within legal operating limits.
- On a daily basis, as a general rule, for at least several miles/kilometers.

Unusual operating conditions, such as driving in dusty areas (sweeper, agricultural or off-road vehicles), extended idling (refrigeration vehicles), or vehicles operated for frequent short trips, will require more frequent vehicle maintenance.

The log groups items according to mile/kilometer service intervals. Use the item codes (letter and number) to find the description of the maintenance and the time intervals.

Follow whichever interval comes first, time or miles/kilometers.

After the maintenance services are performed, insert the month, day and mileage/ kilometers in the area provided next to the serviced item.

The services shown up to 176 000 km (110,000 miles) are to be repeated after the initial 176 000 km (110,000 miles) at the same intervals.

Severe Driving Conditions

A vehicle operated under severe conditions (see list below) requires more frequent maintenance.

- Frequent short trips of less than 6 kilometers (4 miles) in moderate temperatures
- Frequent short trips of less than 16 kilometers (10 miles) in sub- freezing temperatures
- Frequent and extended low- speed engine operation (door- to- door deliveries, stop- and- go traffic, etc.)
- Driving on unpaved roads with heavy dust
- Towing a trailer

Preventive Maintenance

As any mechanical device operates, a certain amount of wear occurs. The amount of wear depends on certain variables – type and method of operation and the schedule of maintenance. These variables may be emphasized as critical to malfunction but each is dependent upon the other. For example, if a vehicle is repeatedly overloaded, driven at excessive speed or improperly shifted, no schedule of maintenance can prevent malfunction. Also, if a preventive maintenance schedule is not followed, or is improperly carried out, no amount of correct vehicle operation will prevent malfunction.

If vehicle application, operation and preventive maintenance schedules and procedures are followed and properly carried out, the life of the vehicle will be greatly extended.

For example, regular attention to the engine oil is essential. The oil level must be periodically checked and oil added whenever needed. Also, the oil should be changed at the intervals specified with the proper quality and viscosity of oil. If your engine should run excessively low on oil or if the oil has lost its lubricating qualities because of old age, serious engine damage could occur.

Maintenance Schedule Table**Letters Used to Indicate Maintenance Service Types**

I : Inspect then clean, repair or replace as necessary

R : Replace

T : Tighten to the specified torque

L : Lubricate

No.	Service Interval	12 000 km/7,500 mi	24 000 km/15,000 mi	36 000 km/22,500 mi	48 000 km/30,000 mi	60 000 km/37,500 mi	72 000 km/45,000 mi	84 000 km/52,500 mi	96 000 km/60,000 mi	108 000 km/67,500 mi	120 000 km/75,000 mi	132 000 km/82,500 mi	144 000 km/90,000 mi	156 000 km/97,500 mi	168 000 km/105,000 mi	180 000 km/112,500 mi	192 000 km/120,000 mi	Service intervals months or kilometers (miles) whichever occurs first (1)
1	Engine oil (2) (4)	See Explanation of Complete Vehicle Maintenance Schedule																Or every 225 hours
2	Engine oil filter (2) (4)	See Explanation of Complete Vehicle Maintenance Schedule																Or every 225 hours
3	Cooling System Service	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	or every 24 months
4	Engine Coolant (2)	Every 84 000 km (52,500 mi): R																
5	Air Cleaner Filter (2)	Every 48 000 km (30,000 mi): R																
6	PCV System (2)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
7	Spark Plugs (2)	Every 157 000 km (97,500 mi): R																
8	Spark Plug Wires (2)	Every 157 000 km (97,500 mi): R																
9	Fuel Tank, Cap, and Lines (2) (6)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
10	Engine Accessory Drive Belt(s) (2)	Every 60 000 km (37,500 mi): I Every 157 000 km (97,500 mi): R																
11	Evaporative Control System (2) (6)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
12	Shields and Underhood Insulation (5)	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	
13	Air Intake System (5)	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	
14	Thermostatically Controlled Engine Cooling Fan (5)	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I	or every 12 months
15	Automatic Transmission Fluid	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	I	
16	Rotate Tires	Every 12 000 km (7,500 mi)																
17	Brake Lining and Pad for Wear	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
18	Brake drum and rotor for wear and damage	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I	or every 12 months

[illegible]

Remarks

- (1) In case this column is blank, follow kilometers (miles).
- (2) An Emission Control Service.
- (3) Initial check at 1 040 km (650 miles) is required.
- (4) See Severe Driving Condition.
- (5) A Noise Emission Control Service.
- (6) The California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of vehicle useful life. GM, however, urges that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals.

Explanation of Complete Vehicle Maintenance Schedule

The following is a brief explanation of each of the services listed in the preceding Complete Vehicle Maintenance Schedule for gasoline vehicles.

1. ENGINE OIL : Change at intervals noted below depending upon driving conditions.

• **NORMAL SERVICE** - Change every 12 000 km (7,500 miles), 12 months, or every 225 hours, whichever occurs first.

• **SEVERE SERVICE**- Change every 4 800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months if you often drive under one or more of these conditions (a) driving in dusty areas, (b) frequent idling or idling for long periods, (c) driving 6 km (4 miles) or less in freezing weather, or other short trips in cold weather, where the engine does not thoroughly warm up. Change oil and filter as soon as you can after driving in a dust storm.

2. OIL FILTER : Change at intervals noted below depending upon driving conditions.

• **NORMAL SERVICE** - Change every 12 000 km (7,500 miles), 12 months, or every 225 hours, whichever occurs first.

• **SEVERE SERVICE**- Change every 4 800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months whichever occurs first.

3. COOLING SYSTEM SERVICE : At 24 months or 48 000 km (30,000 miles) intervals, wash radiator cap and filler neck with clean water, pressure test system and radiator cap for proper pressure holding capacity, tighten

hose clamps and inspect condition of all cooling and heater hoses. Replace hoses if cracked, swollen or otherwise deteriorated.

Also each 24 months or 48 000 km (30,000 miles), clean exterior of radiator core.

4. ENGINE COOLANT : Every 84 000 km (52,500 miles), drain the engine coolant by opening the drain plug at the bottom of the radiator core, flush and refill the engine cooling system with a new 50/50 engine coolant solution.

5. AIR CLEANER FILTER : Change every 48 000 km (30,000 miles).

6. POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION (PCV) SYSTEM : Check that PCV system works properly. Replace the valve and any worn, plugged or collapsed hoses as necessary.

7. SPARK PLUGS : Change every 156 000 km (97,500 miles).

8. SPARK PLUG WIRES : Clean wires and inspect for burns, cracks or other damage. Check the wire boot fit at the coilpack and at the spark plugs. And replace every 156 000 km (97,500 miles).

9. FUEL TANK, CAP AND LINES : Inspect the fuel tank, cap and lines for damage or leaks. Remove fuel cap, inspect gasket for an even filler neck imprint, and any damage. Replace parts as needed.

10. ENGINE ACCESSORY DRIVE BELT(S) : Inspect belts. Look for cracks, fraying, wear, and proper tension. Adjust or replace as needed, and change every 156 000 km (97,500 miles).

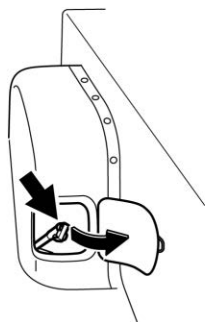
11. EVAPORATIVE CONTROL SYSTEM (ECS) : Visually check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hookup, routing, and condition. Check that bowl vent and purge valves work properly, if equipped. Replace as needed.

12. SHIELDS AND UNDER HOOD INSULATION : Inspect shields and under hood insulation for damage or looseness. Adjust or replace as required.

13. AIR INTAKE SYSTEM : Check the air intake system installation to see that gaskets are seated properly and all hose connections, fasteners, and other components are tight. Also check to be sure that the air cleaner housing is properly seated, that the cover fits tightly, and the wingnut(s) is/are tight. Tighten connections and fasteners or replace damaged parts as required.

14. THERMOSTATICALLY CONTROLLED ENGINE COOLING FAN : With the engine off and below normal operating temperature, check to see that the fan can be rotated by hand on fluid coupling or viscous drives. Replace as necessary.

15. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID :



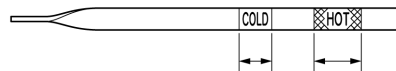
If you have driven for a prolonged period of time or in city traffic in hot weather, wait until the fluid cools down (Approx. 30 minutes) before checking fluid level.

Single cab: Remove the dipstick located at the rear right side of the engine.

Crew cab: Remove the dipstick located beneath the rear-of-engine inspection panel. After unlatching the A/T fluid inspection cover, the dipstick will be visible.

Carefully touch the wet end of the dipstick to find out if the fluid is cool, warm or hot. Wipe it clean and push it back in until the cap seats. Pull out the dipstick and read the fluid level.

If it felt cool, about room temperature, the level should be in the "C" range.



If it felt warm, about normal operating temperature of 70 °C to 80 °C (158 °F to 176 °F), the level should be in the "H" range.

16. ROTATE TIRES : To equalize wear, rotate tires and adjust tire pressures at every 12 000 km (7,500 miles). See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ 201.

17. BRAKE LINING AND PAD FOR WEAR :

Check drum brake linings and disc brake pads for wear or cracks at every 12 000 km (7,500 miles). Check brakes (including parking brake) more often if conditions and habits result in frequent braking.

Front disc brakes have built-in wear indicators which are designed to make a high pitched squeal or cricket-like warning sound when the brake pads are worn to the point where new pads are needed.

When the truck is in motion, the sound may be constant or it may come and go.

Pressing the brake pedal firmly may cause the sound to stop.

Have the brake linings or the brake pads replaced by your authorized dealer as soon as possible after the warning first becomes evident.

Failure to do so can result in expensive damage to the brake system or a serious crash.

18. BRAKE DRUM AND ROTOR FOR WEAR AND DAMAGE : Check brake drums (rear and parking) and rotors for wear or damage every 48 000 km (30,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.

19. BRAKE ELECTRIC VACUUM PUMP (4500 Model) : Inspect the brake electric vacuum pump operation every 12 000 km (7,500 miles) or 12 months, whichever occurs first.

How to check: This operation could be difficult and you may choose to have this done at your dealer Service Department.

1. Turn the engine control switch to the "ON" position (not to start the engine), and press the brake pedal several times.
2. Check for the noisy sound of the electric vacuum pump inside the instrument panel at the same time as vacuum warning buzzer sound, and check that the brake low vacuum warning light comes on.
3. Then, after you start the engine, the main vacuum pump driven by the engine will start running. If the electric vacuum pump operation (noisy sound) and the vacuum warning buzzer stop, and the brake low vacuum warning light goes off thereafter, the operation is normal.
4. If you cannot hear the noisy sound of the electric vacuum pump, check the electrical wiring and repair as necessary. If it cannot be repaired, replace the electric vacuum pump.

20. BRAKE FLUID : Check the fluid in the brake fluid reservoir every 12 000 km (7,500 miles) and replace fluid every 48 000 km (30,000 miles).

21. BRAKE LINE AND HOSES : Check lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. every 48 000 km (30,000 miles). Any questionable parts should be replaced or repaired at once. When rubbing or wear is noted on lines or hoses, the cause must be corrected at once.

22. HYDRAULIC UNIT : Change every 10 years.

23. DIFFERENTIAL GEAR OIL : Replace lubricant every 48 000 km (30,000 miles) or every 24 months. Check lubricant level every 12 000 km (7,500 miles) or every 12 months, and add lubricant to within 0 to 10 mm (0 to 0.4 inch) of the bottom edge of the filler hole if necessary.

24. POWER STEERING FLUID : Replace power steering fluid every 24 months or 60 000 km (37,500 miles), whichever occurs first.

25. STEERING WHEEL FREE PLAY : Check steering wheel free play after the first 1 040 km (650 miles) and then every 12 000 km (7,500 miles).

Steering wheel free play
10-50 mm (0.39-1.97 in)

26. STEERING GEAR BOX TORQUE : Retighten the fixing bolts of the steering gear box to the specified torque every 48 000 km (30,000 miles). Specified tightening torque.

Steering gear box tightening torque
102 N•m (75 lb-ft)

27. DRIVESHAFT FLANGE TORQUE : Check the fixing bolts of driveshaft flange for looseness or damage first 12 000 km (7,500 miles). Retighten the fixing bolts to the specified torque every 24 000 km (15,000 miles). Specified tightening torque.

Driveshaft flange tightening torque
103 N•m (76 lb-ft)

28. LEAF SPRING U-BOLT TORQUE : Tighten the U-Bolt nuts to the specified torque at 1 040 km (650 miles), 12 000 km (7,500 miles) and thereafter each 24 000 km (15,000 miles). Specified tightening torque.

Leaf spring U-bolt nut tightening torque
Front 127 N•m (94 lb-ft)

Rear	177 N•m (131 lb-ft)
------	---------------------

29. WHEEL NUT TORQUE : Check tires for excessive or abnormal wear, or damage. Also check tire inflation pressures and adjust. Be sure wheels are not bent or cracked and that wheel nuts have been tightened to the specified torque at 1 040 km (650 miles) and then every 12 000 km (7,500 miles).

Wheel nut tightening torque
500 N•m (362 lb-ft)

30. KING PIN : Lubricate the grease fitting on the king pins every 12 months or 12 000 km (7,500 miles) whichever occurs first.

31. DRIVESHAFT : Lubricate the grease fitting on each universal joint and spline coupling at 12 months or 24 000 km (15,000 miles) whichever occurs first.

32. WHEEL HUB BEARING GREASE : Clean and repack front wheel bearings at every brake relining or 48 000 km (30,000 miles) whichever comes first.

33. ACCESSORY DRIVE BELT : Replace the belt that drives the A/C compressor every 160 000 km (100,000 miles).

34. AIR CONDITIONER BLOWER FILTER : The air conditioner blower filter should be removed and cleaned once a month.

35. Wiper Blades : Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated, replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged, or at least once a year. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ 173.

Owner Checks and Services

Before Driving

Proper care and driving is important not only for extended service life of your vehicle, but also for improved fuel and oil economy. Drive carefully and defensively. Be sure you know how to use your truck and its equipment before operating it.

Starting and Operating

Proper care and operation will not only extend the service life of your vehicle but also improve fuel economy.

Check Around the Vehicle Before Starting the Engine

Before pulling away, perform a thorough safety check, making sure there are no children or obstructions around the vehicle.

Take off the chocks after confirming that the parking brake is securely applied. Sit behind the wheel, adjust the seat position, and buckle up the seat belt. The passengers are also required to buckle up the seat belts. Adjust the positions of the steering wheel and mirrors. Lock the doors. Turn the power of the dome light or accessories OFF before starting the engine.

Engine Conditions

Checking the Engine for Startability and Abnormal Noises

1. Make sure the parking brake is securely engaged. Step firmly on the brake pedal.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in "P" or "N" position.

For safety, firmly press the brake pedal before starting the engine.

3. Turn the engine control switch to start the engine.

Check that the engine starts quickly with no abnormal noises.

Checking Condition of the Engine at Low Speeds and during Acceleration

1. Make sure the transmission is in the "P" or "N" position and the parking brake is securely engaged.
2. Turn the engine control switch to start the engine, and run it to warm up.
3. Check that the engine is running at a speed within the standard idle speed range.
4. Drive the vehicle, making sure the accelerator pedal does not stick when gradually accelerating, the engine speed rises smoothly and it does not knock.

Recommended Daily (Pre-operation) Inspections

These checks are in addition to, not instead of, any legally required daily inspections. See related topics under "Maintenance Schedule", especially if problems are found.

For safe and comfortable driving, keep record of the distances driven and the condition of the vehicle during operation. Perform inspections at appropriate intervals, and perform maintenance in accordance with the findings of the inspections. If an inspection reveals an abnormality or there

was an abnormality the previous time the vehicle was driven, have the vehicle repaired by the nearest dealer before it is driven again.

1. Components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation
 - Check components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation
2. Checks performed at the engine
 - Fan belt looseness and damage
 - Engine oil level
 - Engine coolant level
 - Power steering fluid level
3. Checks performed from the driver's seat
 - Brake fluid level
 - Brake pedal free play
 - Operation of meters, gauges and warning/indicator lights
 - Engine startability, abnormal noise and color of exhaust gases
 - Parking brake lever stroke
 - Windshield washer fluid spray condition and windshield wiper effectiveness
 - Windshield washer fluid level
 - Steering wheel position and free play

- Operation of horn and turn signal lights
 - Door lock operation
4. Checks performed during a walk around the vehicle
- Illumination, flashing, contamination, damage and obstruction of lights
 - Contamination, damage and obstruction of windows, mirrors and reflectors
 - Leaf spring damage
 - Oil, engine coolant, fuel, brake fluid and power steering fluid leaks
5. Checking wheels and tires
- Air pressure
 - Cracks and other damage
 - Abnormal wear
 - Tread depth
 - Mounting condition of all wheel nuts
6. Checks performed after the engine startup
- Oil, engine coolant, fuel, brake fluid and power steering fluid leaks
 - Inspect the exhaust system, checking that the tailpipe is clear

7. Checks performed while driving the vehicle

- Brake effectiveness
- Engine abnormal noises

Keep the Floor Around the Driver Seat Clean and Tidy

Warning

It is extremely dangerous to have empty cans, empty bottles, or other items rolling around on the floor because they could get trapped under the brake pedal and prevent brake application. For proper pedal operation, it is also essential to lay floor mats properly. Incorrectly installed floor mats would hinder free movement of the pedals.

Do not use the dashboard pocket or the top of the dashboard as a place to put items that could roll, which could interfere with your driving. You and others could be seriously injured.

Choose Your Footwear Suitable for Driving

Warning

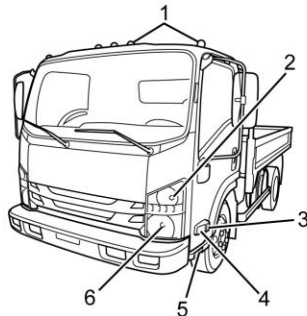
Choose footwear that ensures proper operation of pedals when driving the vehicle. Use of footwear unsuitable for driving may cause an accident. The driver could be seriously injured when not wearing the proper footwear.

Electrical System

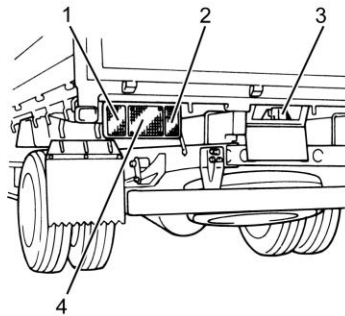
Following the after-delivery service, it is the owner's responsibility to check all wiring periodically for cracked, chafed or oil-soaked insulation and maintain it in a clean and tight condition to ensure satisfactory operation of the electrical system.

Headlights and Turn Signal Lights

Turn the engine control switch to the "ON" position, and then check the way in which the headlights, turn signal lights, and other exterior lights come on and flash. In addition, press the brake pedal to confirm whether the stop lights come on, and shift the transmission to "R" position to confirm whether the back up lights come on. Also examine the lights for discoloration, damage, and looseness.

**Front**

1. Roof Marker Lamp (Identification/Clearance Lamp)
2. Front Turn Signal Lamp
3. Side Turn Signal Lamp/Sidemarkers Lamp
4. Cornering Lamp
5. Side Reflector
6. Headlamp/Parking Lamp

**Rear**

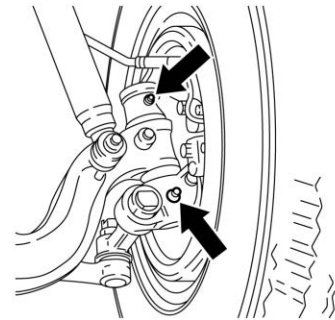
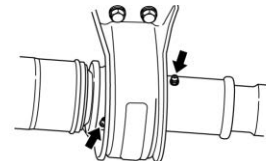
1. Rear Turn Signal Lamp
2. Back-up Lamp
3. License Plate Lamp
4. Taillamp/Stoplamp

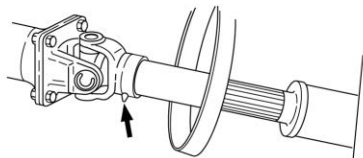
Lubrication

One of the most important items of good vehicle care is the lubrication of all necessary points with the Right Lubricant, at the Right Time and in the Right Way. It is the owner's responsibility to maintain proper lubrication practices as recommended in the following pages.

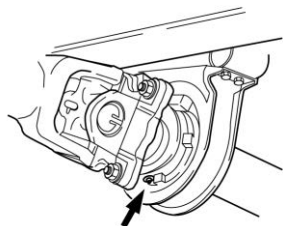
Greasing Chassis Components

The type (characteristics) of the grease specified for use with a chassis component differs from that of the grease specified for use with another component. Be sure to use only the specified grease for each component and perform greasing according to the Maintenance Schedule.

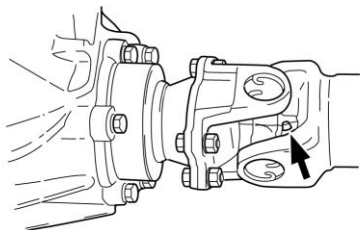
**King pins (left and right)****Driveshaft splines and center bearing (3500)**



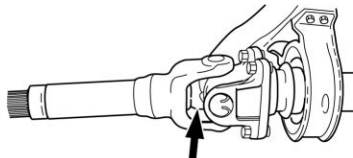
Driveshaft splines (4500)



Center bearing (4500)



Driveshaft universal joint (Single-piece shaft)

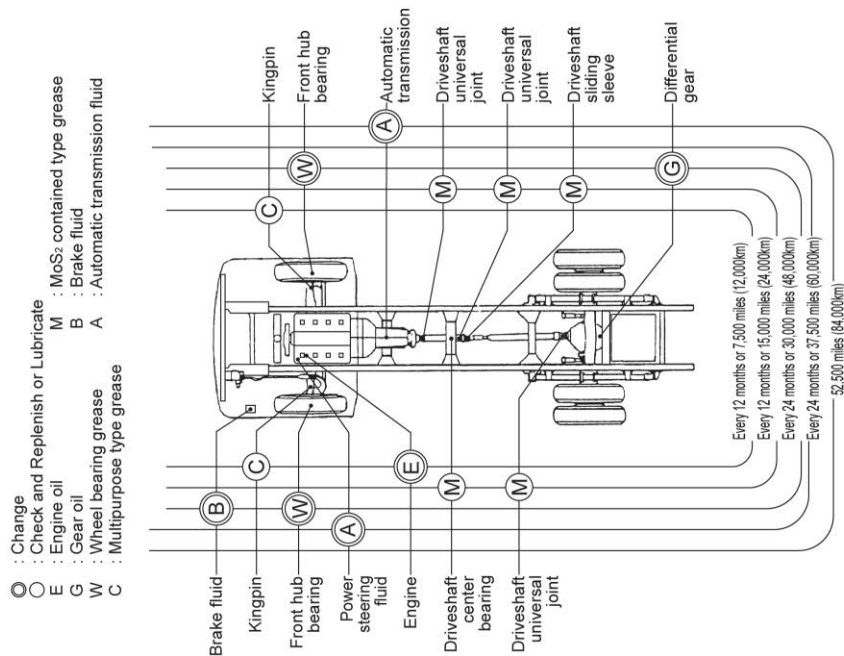


Driveshaft universal joint (Two-piece shaft)

Single-piece driveshaft: 2 points; Two-piece driveshaft: 3 points

Each driveshaft universal joint must be greased heavily until grease oozes at the 4 needle bearing oil seal locations. After greasing, wipe off excess grease.

Lubrication Chart



Additional Maintenance and Care

Owner Safety and Routine Maintenance

Listed below are vehicle checks which should be made periodically by either the owner or a qualified technician to ensure proper performance and safety of your vehicle. Take any problems promptly to a technician for service advice.

For your safety and that of others, any of the safety-related components that may have been damaged in a crash should be checked and necessary repairs performed before operating your vehicle.

At the minimum, these routine checks should be made every 6 months or every 9,600 km (6,000 miles) whichever comes first. Whenever repairs are necessary, have them completed before operating the vehicle.

A: Parking Brake : Park on a fairly steep hill and hold the vehicle with the parking brake only. This checks holding ability.

Before checking item (B) below, be sure to have enough room around the vehicle. Then firmly apply both the parking brake see *Parking Brake* ⇨ 139 and the regular brakes. Do not use the accelerator pedal. If the engine starts, be ready to turn off the engine control switch at once. Take these precautions because the vehicle could move without warning and possibly cause injury or property damage.

B: Starter Safety Switch : Check by trying to start the engine in each gear. The starter should crank only at selector position "P" or "N".

C: Transmission Shift Indicator : Check that the indicator points to the gear chosen.

D: Steering : Be alert for any changes in steering action. An inspection or service is needed when: the steering wheel is harder to turn or has too much free play, or when there are strange sounds when turning or parking.

E: Wheel Alignment, Balance, and Tires : Check tires for abnormal wear or damage. Also, check for damaged wheels. A pull right or left on a straight and level road may show the need for a wheel alignment. A vibration of the steering wheel or seat at normal highway speeds may mean a wheel

balancing is needed. Check tire pressure when the tires are "cold," at least monthly, and whenever the vehicle is serviced.

Check the pressure more often if daily checks show it's needed. (Refer to "Recommended Daily (Pre-operation) Inspections" under *Owner Checks and Services* ⇨ 226). Change tire pressure as needed when changing loads.

F: Brakes : Be alert to illumination of the brake system warning light or brake low vacuum warning light or the tone alarm, or changes in braking action, such as repeated pulling to one side, unusual sounds when braking, increased brake pedal travel or harder pedal. The front and rear brakes are attached to an auto adjuster mechanism. If there are no defects, as the pedal travel is properly maintained, adjustments are not necessary. Check regularly that the brake fluid reservoir (left-hand side of the instrument panel) is properly filled and check for fluid leaks. Any of these conditions could indicate the need for brake system inspection and/or service.

G: Exhaust System : Be alert for any changes in the sound of the exhaust system or any smell of fumes. These are signs the system may be leaking. Have it checked

and/or repaired at once. (Refer to "Engine Exhaust Emissions Caution (Carbon Monoxide)" under *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ 128).

H: Windshield Wipers and Washers : Check operation and condition of the wiper blades. Check the flow of the washer spray.

I: Defroster : Turn the outlet selector knob to "Defroster" and the fan speed control knob to the fully clockwise position. Then check the airflow from the ducts at the inside base of the windshield.

J: Rearview Mirrors and Sun Visors : Check that friction joints hold mirrors and sun visors in place.

K: Horn : Sound the horn, now and then, to be sure it works.

L: Lap-Shoulder Belts : Check the seat belt system (including webbing, buckles, latch plates and anchors) for proper operation, and for damage.

M: Seat Adjusters : When adjusting the driver's manual seat, be sure the seat adjusters latch by pushing the seat forward and backward. Do not attempt to adjust the seat when the vehicle is in motion.

N: Lamps : Check panel lighting, warning lamps, indicator lamps and interior lamps. On the outside, check: license plate lamps, side marker lamps, reflectors on outside mirrors, headlamps, parking lamps, identification and clearance lamps, taillights, brake lamps, turn signals, cornering lamps, backup lamps and hazard warning flashers. Have headlamp aim checked immediately if beams seem improperly aimed.

O: Glass, Mirrors, Lights and/or Reflectors Condition : Look for broken, scratched, dirty or damaged glass, mirrors, lamps or reflectors that could reduce the view or visibility, or cause injury. Replace, clean or repair promptly.

P: Door Latches : Check that doors close, latch and lock tightly. Check for broken, damaged or missing parts that might prevent tight latching.

Q :Tilt Cab (Driving Position) : Be sure the tilt lever is down and locked.

R: Fluid Leaks : Check for fuel, water, oil or other fluid leaks by looking at the surface beneath the vehicle after it has been parked for a while. If you notice gasoline fumes or fluid at any time, have the cause found and corrected at once.

S: Underbody : Corrosive materials used for ice removal, snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system. At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Take care to clean well any areas where mud and other debris can collect. Sediment packed in closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed.

Checking Components that Showed Abnormalities during Previous Operation

Check the components that showed abnormalities during the previous operation. Have any abnormalities repaired by your dealer before using the vehicle.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name or specification, including fluids or lubricants not listed here, can be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Battery Terminals	Petroleum Jelly (outer surfaces)
Brake Fluid	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19353126).
Cab-Door Hinges and Latches Lubricant	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241) or equivalent containing zinc oxide.
Chassis Lubricant	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985) or high temperature equivalent.
Driveshaft Center Bearing, Wheel Hub Bearing Lubricant	NLGI #2 or #3
Driveshaft, Universal Joints and Sliding Sleeve Lubricant	NLGI #1 or #2 multi-purpose type grease
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL coolant. See <i>Engine Coolant</i> ⇨ 158.
Engine Oil	Engine oil meeting the dexos1 specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos1 full synthetic is recommended. See <i>Engine Oil</i> ⇨ 153.
Power Steering Fluid	DEXRON-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Rear Axle	Multi purpose gear oil SAE80W-90 GL-5, SAE90 GL-5

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Rear Axle (Limited slip differential (LSD))	Multi purpose gear oil SAE80W-90 GL-5, SAE90 GL-5 for limited slip differential together with limited slip differential lubricant additive (GM Part No. 88900330) or equivalent.
Windshield Washer Solvent	Automotive windshield washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.

Be sure to use the LSD gear oil additive mentioned above in vehicles equipped with limited slip differentials, and ensure there is an appropriate amount of the LSD gear oil additive, otherwise a chattering noise and/or excessive vibration may occur when turning.

If abnormal noises occur despite having used the specified LSD gear oil additive, have it inspected and serviced at your dealer.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement Parts

Please contact your dealer for genuine GM parts.

Warning

If part replacement is necessary, the part must be replaced with one of the same part number or with an equivalent part. Use of a replacement part of lesser quality may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

Part	GM Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner	97780479
Engine Oil Filter	12690385

Replacement Fasteners

During vehicle maintenance, any fasteners used to replace older ones must have the same measurements and strength as those removed, whether metric or customary. Fasteners taken from the vehicle should be saved for reuse in the same location when possible. Where a fastener cannot be used again, take care to choose a replacement that matches the old one. For information and help, see your dealer.

Warning

This vehicle is primarily dimensioned in the metric system. Most fasteners are metric and many are very close in dimension to well-known customary fasteners in the inch system. Mismatched or incorrect fasteners can result in damage to the vehicle or possibly personal injury.

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ... 237

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications 242

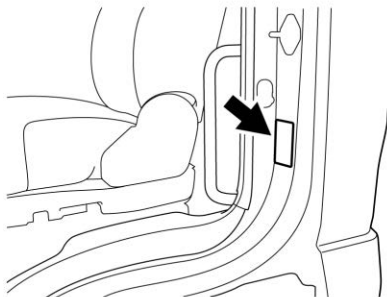
Engine Drive Belt Routing 247

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN and engine number are necessary for registering your vehicle. They are also necessary when your vehicle undergoes official inspections. Provide your dealer with these numbers when you are having the vehicle repaired or when ordering replacement parts. The Dealer will be able to do the requested jobs more competently and quickly.

VIN and Weight Rating Plate



INCOMPLETE VEHICLE MFD BY/
VÉHICULE INCOMPLÉT FABRIQUÉ PAR
SPARTAN MOTORS CHASSIS INC
UNITED STATES/ÉTATS-UNIS
THIS VEHICLE IS AN INCOMPLETE
VEHICLE/LE VÉHICULE EST UN
VEHICULE INCOMPLÉT.
GVWR/PNBV: 6,577KG (14,500LB)
GAWR/PNBE: 3,007KG (6,630LB)
(FRONT/AV.) 225/70R19.5F/G TIRES/PNEU
19.5X6.00 RIMS/JANTE
590KPA (85PSI), COLD TIRE
PRESSURE/PRESSION À FROID
GAWR/PNBE: 4,998KG (11,020LB)
(REAR/ARR.) 225/70R19.5F/G TIRES/PNEU
19.5X6.00 RIMS/JANTE
590KPA (85PSI), COLD TIRE
PRESSURE/PRESSION À FROID
DUAL/DOUBLE
GCWR/PNBC: 9,291KG (20,500LB)
VIN/NIV:
TYPE/CLASSE:
VEHICLE EMISSIONS CONTROL INFORMATION
INFORMATION DE CONTRÔLE DES ÉMISSIONS DE VÉHICULES
THIS VEHICLE COMPLIES WITH U.S. EPA AND CALIFORNIA
REGULATIONS FOR HEAVY-DUTY VEHICLES.
/CE VÉHICULE EST CONFORME AUX RÈGLEMENTS
DE L'ÉPA DES ÉTATS-UNIS ET DE LA CALIFORNIE
RELATIFS AUX VÉHICULES UTILITAIRES LOURDS DE .
VEHICLE FAMILY CODE : SZZVOCVJHD
/CODE DE FAMILLE DE VÉHICULES
REGULATORY SUB CATEGORY
/SOUS-CATÉGORIE DE RÉGLEMENTATION:
VOCATIONAL VEHICLES AT OR BELOW 19,500 POUNDS GVWR
/VÉHICULES SPÉCIALISÉS DE OU INFÉRIEUR
À 8,845 KG / 19,500 LB (PNBV)
EMISSION CONTROL IDENTIFIERS: LRRA
/IDENTIFICATEUR DE CONTRÔLE DES ÉMISSIONS
ISUZU

The "Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate" shows the manufacturer's gross vehicle weight rating

(GVWR), the front and rear gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs), as well as the VIN and emissions information for your vehicle.

This plate is located on the left side rear pillar panel below the striker (single cab) or on the left center pillar panel beside the shoulder seat belt anchor (crew cab).

The VIN is a legal identifier of your vehicle. It not only appears on the VIN plate; but also on the vehicle certificates of title and registration. The VIN specifically identifies a vehicle by code.

See “Overloading” under *Information on Loading the Vehicle* ⇨ 38.

The VIN contains multiple pieces of information including the vehicle and engine model codes as shown below.

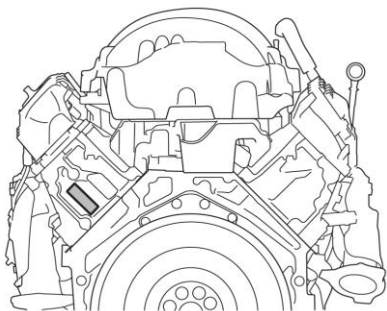
5	4	D	C	4	W	1	D	*	M	S	2	0	0	0	0	1
	1		2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10			11		

Section	Description
1	World Manufacturer Identifier (WMI) 54D: ISUZU Incomplete Spartan Assembly Plant
2	GVWR and Brake System B: 10001-14000 lbs. hydraulic brake system C: 14001-16000 lbs. hydraulic brake system
3	Series Code 4: NPR/NPR-HD
4	Cab Type Code W: Steel tilt single cab, 71 inch bumper to back of cab (BBC) J: Non-tilt crew cab, 110 inch bumper to back of cab (BBC)
5	Chassis Type Code 1: 4 x 2
6	Engine Code D: L8T-V8 Gasoline Engine
7	Check Digit
8	Model Year Code M: 2021

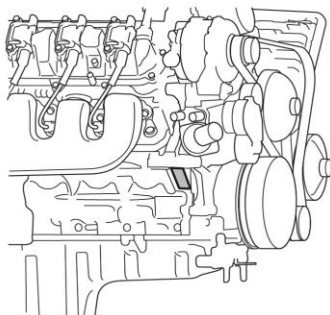
Section	Description
9	Plant Code S: THE SHYFT GROUP/BUILTMOORE
10	Model Code 2: NPR/NPR-HD
11	Sequence Numbers

Interpretation of the VIN may differ depending on the vehicle. For further details, please ask your dealer.

Engine Number



Left Side Rear



Right Side Front

The engine number is located on the left side rear part of the cylinder head and the right side front part of the engine block.

Option Codes



The ID plate at the upper part of the righthand door striker indicates option codes. These codes are three-digit, alphanumeric codes, each assigned to a particular component of the vehicle.

You will be able to use these codes to identify the model or type of engine, transmission, rear axle or other components when your vehicle needs inspection and other services.

Option Codes	Component
L8T	Engine: V8 Gasoline Engine
MYD	Transmission: Automatic transmission 6L90 model
6CP	Heavy-duty 320mm
EEQ	Other Components: 65 MPH (105 km/h) Speed limiting

There are more option codes than those indicated above. Depending on the vehicle, an option code may not be shown. For detailed specifications of your vehicle, see your dealer.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

These specifications are given here for information only. Before using them, see the Cautions and other instructions throughout this manual – the index may help you locate such items. For more information, see the Service Manual covering the chassis or body part in question. Your dealer may also be able to help.

Engine Specifications	
Description	Water-cooled, overhead valve, engine
Manufacturer	GMPT
Model	L8T
Engine type	V8, Four Cycle
Induction	Mass Air
Bore	103.25 mm
Stroke	98 mm
Displacement	6.600 L (403 CID)
Full load RPM	4,500 r/min
Compression ratio	10.75 to 1
Firing order	1-8-7-2-6-5-4-3
Fuel injection timing (static) degree	Variable
Idling speed	500 r/min
Oil filter	Replaceable element type

Engine oil capacity	When changing oil and filter: 7.6 L (8.0 qt) ¹	
Engine coolant capacity	14.75 L (15.6 qt/3.9 gal) ²	
Transmission Specifications		
Model	6L90 Six-speed automatic transmission (overdrive gear for 5th and 6th), lock-up clutch for 2nd to 6th	
Gear ratio	1st	4.027 to 1
	2nd	2.364 to 1
	3rd	1.532 to 1
	4th	1.152 to 1
	5th	0.852 to 1
	6th	0.667 to 1
Reverse	3.064 to 1	
Transmission oil capacity	12.5 L (13.2 qt/3.3 gal)	
Weights		
Axle weight rating : Front	3500: 2204 kg (4,860 lb) 4500: 3007 kg (6,630 lb)	
Engine Oil Service		
Engine oil capacity	When changing oil and filter: 7.6 L (8.0 qt) ¹	
Engine Cooling System Service		
Capacity	14.75 L (15.6 qt/3.9 gal)	

Engine oil Thermostat: Starts to open	85.5-87.5 °C (185.9-189.5 °F)
Radiator pressure	103 kPa (15 psi)
Transmission Service	
Model	6L90
Transmission oil capacity	12.5 L (13.2 qt/3.3 gal) ³
Rear Axle Service	
Differential gear oil capacity	10.0 L (10.6 qt/2.6 gal) ⁴
Limited slip differential lubricant additive	0.6 L (0.63 qt/0.16 gal) ⁵

Fuel	
Fuel tank capacity ⁶	146 L (38.6 gal)
Steering	
Steering wheel free play	10 - 50 mm (0.39 - 1.97 in)
Power steering fluid capacity	1.6 L (1.7 qt/0.41 gal)
Wheel	
Wheel alignment	
Toe-in	-2 to 2 mm (-0.08 to 0.08 in)

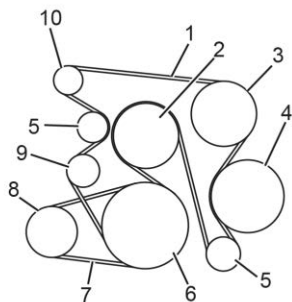
Camber	0°15'	
Caster	LH 2°50', RH 3°40'	
King pin	12°	
Front wheel hub bearing grease capacity (reference value)	0.14 kg (0.31 lb)	
Rear wheel hub bearing grease capacity (reference value)	0.04 kg (0.09 lb)	
Wheel stud nut torque : Front and rear	500 N•m (362 lb ft)	
Disc Brakes		
Model	3500	4500
Brake size (Diameter x Thickness)	293 x 40 mm (11.54 x 1.57 in)	363 x 42 mm (14.29 x 1.65 in)
Rotor thickness		
[Standard Value]	40.0 mm (1.575 in)	42.0 mm (1.654 in)
[Usable Limit]	37.0 mm (1.457 in)	39.0 mm (1.535 in)
Pad thickness		
[Standard Value]	13.0 mm (0.512 in)	13.0 mm (0.512 in)

[Usable Limit]	1.0 mm (0.04 in)	1.0 mm (0.04 in)
Service Brakes		
Brake pedal free play	Refer to <i>Brakes</i> ⇨ 166.	
Clearance between the brake pedal and the brake pedal bracket (applied to the brake pedal)		
Parking Brake		
Lever effective stroke (Under pull force of approx. 147 N (15 kg/33 lb))	6 - 8 notches	
Electrical System		
Battery type [BCI size] (RC-CCA) x No. of units	31 T (180 - 750) x 1	
Starter	12 V - 1.7 kw	
Generator	12 V - 170 amp	
Remarks: ¹ see <i>Engine Oil</i> ⇨ 153. Remarks: ² see <i>Engine Coolant</i> ⇨ 158. Remarks: ³ see <i>Automatic Transmission Fluid</i> ⇨ 155. Remarks: ⁴ see <i>Rear Axle (Gear Oil Viscosity Chart)</i> ⇨ 170 or <i>Rear Axle (Oil Level Check)</i> ⇨ 171. Remarks: ⁵ only for vehicles equipped with optional limited slip differential. Remarks: ⁶ The fuel tank capacity is stated on a metal plate attached to the fuel tank body. Only fill the tank to 95 percent of its capacity; this allows room for the expansion of the fuel.		

Engine Drive Belt Routing

Fan Belt and Air Conditioning Compressor Belt

See the *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ 218.



No.	Name
1	Fan belt
2	Cooling fan pulley
3	Power steering pump pulley
4	Vacuum pulley
5	Fan belt idler pulley
6	Crank pulley

No.	Name
7	A/C belt
8	A/C compressor
9	Fan belt tensioner
10	Generator

Customer Information

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure	248
Customer Assistance Offices	249
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users	249
Online Owner Center	249
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program	250
Roadside Assistance Program	250
Scheduling Service Appointments	251
Collision Damage Repair	251
Service Publications Ordering Information	253
Radio Frequency Statement	253

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government	254
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors	254

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy ...	254
--	-----

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the Chevrolet chassis, or upfitted rear body will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE : Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of your dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO : If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by your dealership without further help call the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-862-4389.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Your name, address, and daytime phone number.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, and on the VIN plate or the Vehicle Certification and Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions Plate in the cab of the vehicle.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.
- Nature of the problem.

When contacting Chevrolet, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners : Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by BBB National Programs, Inc. to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
BBB National Programs, Inc.
3033 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 600
Arlington, VA 22201

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
<http://www.bbb.org/council/programs-services/dispute-handling-and-resolution/bbb-auto-line>

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors.

General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Customer Assistance Offices

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to:

United States

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170
www.Chevrolet.com

1-800-862-4389
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone Devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-888-899-1327

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer

Assistance Center. Any TTY user in the U.S. can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-2438.

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Experience my.chevrolet.com

The Chevrolet online owner experience allows access to videos, articles, and vehicle health specific to your Chevrolet vehicle all in one place.

Membership Benefits

 : Download owner manuals and view vehicle-specific how-to videos.

 : View maintenance schedules, alerts, and OnStar Vehicle Diagnostic Information. Schedule service appointments.

 : View and print dealer-recorded service records and self-recorded service records.

 : Select a preferred dealer and view locations, maps, phone numbers, and hours.

 : Track your vehicle's warranty information.

🚩 : View active recalls by Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ 237.

💬 : Chat with online help representatives.

See my.chevrolet.com to register your vehicle.

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program



This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for the vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

For more information on the limited offer, visit www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

Roadside Assistance Program

Call 1-888-899-1327. (Text Telephone (TTY): 1-888-889-2438.)

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.
- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

Coverage

Services are provided for the duration of the vehicle's powertrain warranty.

Anyone driving the vehicle is covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. General Motors North America and Chevrolet reserve the

right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

General Motors North America and Chevrolet reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow from a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Chevrolet dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is not given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's

responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.

- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

Service is not provided if a vehicle is in an area that is not accessible to the service vehicle or is not a regularly traveled or maintained public road, which includes ice and winter roads. Off-road use is not covered.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If your dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same-day repair.

Collision Damage Repair

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed

appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring the Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs through the use of aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Assistance Program* ⇨ 250.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number.
- Driver license number.
- Owner name, address, and telephone number.
- Vehicle license plate number.

- Vehicle make, model, and model year.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Insurance company and policy number.
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle.

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is

leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner's Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner's Manual, and Warranty Manual.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: \$35.00 – \$40.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Without Pouch: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: \$25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Current and Past Models

Service and Owner publications are available for many current and past model year GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123 Monday – Friday 8:00 AM – 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only
(VISA-MasterCard-Discover), see Helm, Inc. at:
www.helminc.com.

Or write to:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.
Allow ample time for delivery.

All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds.
Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that complies with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-862-4389, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle performance. Your vehicle uses onboard vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy and to provide

anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. These computers and your vehicle's Data Recording Module (DRM) also store information about the performance and status of certain systems in your vehicle including the engine, throttle, and braking systems. General Motors and its affiliates, as well as service and repair facilities may access or download and share this information via a direct connection to your vehicle in order to diagnose and repair problems and properly service the vehicle. GM and its affiliates may also download and retrieve stored information from your vehicle for motor vehicle research and development, safety and vehicle improvement purposes.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications	149
Add-On Electrical Equipment	146
Additional Maintenance and Care	232
Adjustments	
Seat, Initial Drive	21
Agreements	
Trademarks and License	91
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine	157
Air Conditioning	93
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment	97
Air Vents	96
AM-FM Radio	63
Antenna	
Fixed Mast	67
Antilock Brake System (ABS)	137
Warning Light	54
Appearance Care	
Exterior	210
Interior	214
Assistance Program, Roadside	250
Audio	
Bluetooth	82
Audio Players	
CD	67
Automatic	
Transmission	129
Transmission Fluid	155

Automatic Transmission

Selector Lever	136
Shift Lock Control Function Check	172
Auxiliary	
Devices	81
Axle, Rear	170, 171

B

Battery - North America	169, 205
Battery Warning Light	51
Blade Replacement, Wiper	173
Bluetooth	
Overview	84
Bluetooth Audio	82
Brake	
System Warning Light	52
Brakes	166
Antilock	137
Fluid	168
Parking	139
Braking	103
Break-In, New Vehicle	119
Bulb Replacement	
Headlamp Aiming	175
Headlamps	176
Headlamps and Front Turn Signal	178
Interior Lamps	184
License Plate Lamps	184

Bulb Replacement (cont'd)		
Roofmarker Lamps	181	
Sidemarker Lamps	181	
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-up Lamps	184	
Buzzers, Warning	57	
C		
Cab Tilt Warning Light	55	
Cab Tilting	151	
California		
Perchlorate Materials Requirements ...	149	
California Proposition		
65 Warning	149, 169, 205,	
Back Cover		
Capacities and Specifications	242	
Carbon Monoxide		
Engine Exhaust	128	
Winter Driving	109	
Cargo Lamp	61	
Caution, Danger, and Warning	2	
CD Player	67	
Chains, Tire	204	
Check		
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator)	51	
Child Restraints		
Systems	32	
Cleaning		
Exterior Care	210	
Interior Care	214	
Climate Control Systems	93	
Air Conditioning	93	
Heating	93	
Cluster, Instrument	48	
Collision Damage Repair	251	
Compartments		
Storage	35	
Control of a Vehicle	100	
Coolant		
Engine	158	
Engine Temperature Gauge	50	
Engine Temperature Warning Light	54	
Cooling	93	
Cornering Lamps	60	
Cover		
Engine	152	
Cruise Control	141	
Light	56	
Cupholders	37	
Customer Assistance	249	
Offices	249	
Text Telephone (TTY) Users	249	
Customer Information		
Service Publications Ordering		
Information	253	
Cleaning		
Exterior Care	210	
Interior Care	214	
Climate Control Systems	93	
Air Conditioning	93	
Heating	93	
Cluster, Instrument	48	
Collision Damage Repair	251	
Compartments		
Storage	35	
Control of a Vehicle	100	
Coolant		
Engine	158	
Engine Temperature Gauge	50	
Engine Temperature Warning Light	54	
Cooling	93	
Cornering Lamps	60	
Cover		
Engine	152	
Cruise Control	141	
Light	56	
Cupholders	37	
Customer Assistance	249	
Offices	249	
Text Telephone (TTY) Users	249	
Customer Information		
Service Publications Ordering		
Information	253	
Customer Satisfaction Procedure	248	
D		
Damage Repair, Collision	251	
Danger, Warning, and Caution	2	
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)		
Indicator Light	56	
Devices		
Auxiliary	81	
Distracted Driving	100	
Dome Lamps	61	
Door		
Locks	14	
Power Locks	16	
Drive Belt Routing, Engine	247	
Driver Behavior	99	
Driving		
Better Fuel Economy	100	
Emergencies	112, 119	
Hill and Mountain Roads	108	
If the Vehicle is Stuck	111	
Wet Roads	108	
Winter	109	
E		
Electrical Equipment, Add-On	146	
Electrical System		
Overload	184	
Emergencies	112, 119	

Engine	
Air Cleaner/Filter	157
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator)	51
Checks Before Operating	126
Coolant	158
Coolant Temperature Gauge	50
Coolant Temperature Warning Light	54
Cover	152
Drive Belt Routing	247
Exhaust	128
Heater	125
High Idle System	125
Oil Pressure Light	55
Overheating	162
Reduced Power Light	56
Running While Parked	129
Extender, Seat Belt	30
Exterior Lamp Controls	58

F

Filter,	
Engine Air Cleaner	157
Fixed Mast Antenna	67
Flash-to-Pass	59
Flashers, Hazard Warning	59
Flat Tire	205
Fluid	
Automatic Transmission	155

Fluid (cont'd)	
Brakes	168
Power Steering	164
Washer	165
Frequency Statement	
Radio	253
Front Seat Position Seats	
Adjustment	21
Fuel	
Additives	145
Economy, Driving for Better	100
Filling the Tank	145
Foreign Countries	145
Gauge	49
Low Fuel Warning Light	55
Prohibited Fuels	144
Recommended	144
Top Tier	144

G

Gauges	
Engine Coolant Temperature	50
Fuel	49
Odometer	48
Speedometer	48
Tachometer	49
Trip Odometer	48
Warning Lights and Indicators	47

General Information	
Vehicle Care	149
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle	14
Glove Box	36
GM Mobility Reimbursement	
Program	250

H

Hazard Warning Flashers	59
Headlamps	
Aiming	175
Bulb Replacement	176, 178
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	
Indicator Light	56
Flash-to-Pass	59
High-Beam On Light	56
High/Low Beam Changer	59
Heated Mirrors	18
Heater	
Engine	125
Heating	93
High Idle System	125
High-Beam On Light	56
Hill and Mountain Roads	108
Hooks	
Shopping Bag	38
Horn	44
HVAC	93

I

Ignition Positions	120
Information on Loading the Vehicle	38
Instrument Cluster	48
Instrument Panel	
Storage Area	35
Instrument Panel Overview	5, 7, 8
Introduction	1

J

Jump Starting - North America	205
-------------------------------------	-----

K

Keyless Entry	
Remote (RKE) System	11
Keys	9

L

Lamps	
Cargo	61
Cornering	60
Dome	61
Exterior Controls	58
Interior	184
License Plate	184
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine)	51
Roofmarker	181
Sidemarker	181
Lap Belt	29

Lighting

Illumination Control	61
Lights	
Antilock Brake System (ABS)	
Warning	54
Battery Warning	51
Brake System Warning	52
Cab Tilt Warning	55
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator)	51
Cruise Control	56
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	56
Engine Coolant Temperature	
Warning	54
Engine Oil Pressure	55
Flash-to-Pass	59
High-Beam On	56
High/Low Beam Changer	59
Low Fuel Warning	55
Reduced Engine Power	56
Seat Belt Reminders	50
Service Vehicle Soon	51
Loading the Vehicle	38
Locks	
Door	14
Power Door	16
Low Fuel Warning Light	55

M

Maintenance and Care	
Additional	232
Maintenance Schedule	218
Recommended Fluids and	
Lubricants	234
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	51
Mirrors	17
Heated	18

N

New Vehicle Break-In	119
Noise Control System	171

O

Odometer	48
Trip	48
Oil	
Engine	153
Pressure Light	55
Online Owner Center	249
Operating Temperature	124
Ordering	
Service Publications	253
Outlets	
Power	45
Overheating, Engine	162
Overview	
Instrument Panel	5, 7, 8

Owner Checks and Services 226

P

Parking

- Brake 139
- Over Things That Burn 127

Passenger Compartment Air Filter 97

Pedals 120

Perchlorate Materials Requirements,
California 149

Phone

Bluetooth 84

Port

USB 74

Power

- Door Locks 16
- Outlets 45
- Reduced Engine Light 56
- Steering Fluid 164
- Windows 18

Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 29

Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording 254

Prohibited Fuels 144

Proposition 65 Warning,

California 149, 169, 205,
Back Cover

R

Radio Frequency Statement 253

Radio Reception 66

Radios

AM-FM Radio 63

Rear Axle 170, 171

Rear Seats 25

Rear Storage 37

Recommended

Fuel 144

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 234

Reduced Engine Power Light 56

Reimbursement Program, GM

Mobility 250

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ... 10, 11

Replacement Parts

Maintenance 235

Reporting Safety Defects

General Motors 254

U.S. Government 254

Roads

Driving, Wet 108

Roadside Assistance Program 250

Roofmarker Lamps 181

Rotation, Tires 201

Routing, Engine Drive Belt 247

Running the Vehicle While Parked 129

S

Safety Defects Reporting

General Motors 254

U.S. Government 254

Safety System Check 30

Scheduling Appointments 251

Seat Belts 25

Care 31

Extender 30

Lap Belt 29

Reminders 50

Three-Point 27

Use During Pregnancy 29

Seats

Position, Front 21

Rear 25

Security

Vehicle 17

Selector Lever 136

Service 98

Accessories and Modifications 149

Climate Control System 93

Doing Your Own Work 149

Publications Ordering Information 253

Scheduling Appointments 251

Vehicle Soon Light 51

Shift Lock Control Function Check,

Automatic Transmission 172

Shopping Bag Hooks	38
Sidemarkers Lamps	181
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change	60
Specifications and Capacities	242
Speed Limiter	144
Speedometer	48
Starting and Stopping the Vehicle	121
Steering	108
Fluid, Power	164
Wheel Adjustment	43
Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps	
Bulb Replacement	184
Storage	
Rear	37
Storage Areas	
Glove Box	36
Information on Loading the Vehicle	38
Instrument Panel	35
Storage Compartments	35
Stuck Vehicle	111
Sun Visors	20
System	
Noise Control	171
T	
Tachometer	49

Taillamps	
Bulb Replacement	184
Temperature, Operating	124
Text Telephone (TTY) Users	249
Three-Point Seat Belt	27
Tires	
Chains	204
If a Tire Goes Flat	205
Pressure	201
Rotation	201
Tires and Wheels	191
Top Tier Fuel	144
Towing	
Vehicle	208
Trademarks and License Agreements	91
Transmission	
Automatic	129
Fluid, Automatic	155
Trip Odometer	48
Turn and Lane-Change Signals	60
Turn Signal	
Bulb Replacement	184
U	
USB Port	74
Using This Manual	2

V

Vehicle	
Control	100
Getting In and Out	14
Identification Number (VIN)	237
Security	17
Service Soon Light	51
Starting and Stopping	121
Towing	208
Vehicle Care	
Tire Pressure	201
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy	254
Ventilation, Air	96
Visors	20

W

Warning	
Brake System Light	52
Caution and Danger	2
Warning Buzzers	57
Warning Lights, Gauges, and	
Indicators	47
Warnings	
Hazard Flashers	59
Washer Fluid	165
Wheels and Tires	191
Windows	
Power	18

Windshield	
Wiper/Washer	44
Winter	
Driving	109
Wiper Blade Replacement	173



WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.



WARNING

Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. *Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area. *If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside. *Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system. *Do not idle the engine except as necessary. For more information go to www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel.

Customer Assistance:
1-800-222-1020

Connected Services and OnStar:
1-888-4-ONSTAR

Roadside Assistance:
1-800-243-8872



My Chevrolet App



84855772 A

MyCertifiedService.com

